

# **The Category of Epistemic Marking**

A Typological Survey of Knowledge and Perspective in  
Trans-Himalayan Languages

**Carl Bodnaruk**

A thesis submitted to fulfil requirements for the degree  
of  
Doctor of Philosophy

Faculty of Arts and Social Sciences  
The University of Sydney  
Australia

This is to certify that to the best of my knowledge, the content of this thesis is my own work.

This thesis has not been submitted for any degree or other purposes.

I certify that the intellectual content of this thesis is the product of my own work and that all the assistance received in preparing this thesis and sources have been acknowledged.

Carl Bodnaruk

This research reported in this thesis was supported by the award of a Research Training  
Program scholarship to the PhD Candidate.

## Abstract

Grammaticalised marking of epistemic meaning—that is meaning conditioned by the relationship between speech act participants and the information at hand—is widespread across the Trans-Himalayan (Sino-Tibetan, Tibeto-Burman) language family, and more generally the Himalayan region. This thesis provides a typological overview of epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan language family by sampling previous literature and analysis on 68 languages across the family in terms of an updated version of van Driem's (2014) Fallen Leaves model of the phylogeny of the family. In doing so, it develops a number of typological categories for the description of epistemic marking in terms of form and function in cross-linguistic terms, arguing that epistemic bases within a system can be meaningfully classified along a gradient with respect to the strength of claim over epistemic authority being made by the speaker. These typological observations are further utilised to draw more broadly applicable conclusions regarding the theoretical and cognitive foundations of epistemic marking in language. Specifically, this thesis argues for a functional supercategory of epistemic marking which extends epistemicity as described by Boye (2012) to include not only the functional categories of epistemic modality and evidentiality, but also egophoricity (per San Roque et al. 2018), mirativity (per DeLancey 1997, 2012), and engagement (per Evans et al. 2018a,b), and suggests that this marking, and in fact cooperative conversational in general, is inherently attentive to the perspectives of both speech act participants both in terms of relationships to the information at hand, as well as potentially in social terms. Finally, it compares the typological classifications of epistemic marking across the 68 languages sampled and extralinguistic factors, such as economic and sociocultural history, to investigate the possible routes for the development of such a widespread epistemic marking sprachbund, finding that the diachronic development of epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family appears to have spread areally rather than vertically from Proto-Trans-Himalayan, but that any solid conclusions regarding the exact nature of this diffusion are limited by a lack of contemporary knowledge surrounding historical population movements, levels of contact, and records of language itself.

## Acknowledgements

As with any PhD project, none of this would have been possible without the enormous support of the people around me, both academic and personal. First and foremost, I of course need to thank my supervisors, Dr Gwendolyn Hyslop and Dr Lila San Roque, for their incredible and unceasing support over the last few years. I cannot imagine a better two supervisors, and I cannot thank them both enough for going above and beyond the expectations on them, meeting me so often, being happy to answer questions and give advice at any hour, advocating for me to administration, and providing me with so many other opportunities. I also need to thank my colleagues and fellow PhD students in the Linguistics department for their support and camaraderie, in particular the Tibeto-Burman Interest Group for hearing out my ideas and giving such great feedback in the lead up to conferences, Lisa, Carly, Kathryn and Gus, for your support throughout our teaching and marking trials and tribulations, and my colleagues in the NTEU, for fighting for me and with me.

While my time in Bhutan comprises only a small part of this thesis, it was definitely one of the most impactful parts of this project. With that, I need to thank the Lhohpu community for their willingness to share their language with me, in particular Karma Dorji Namba and Tshering Wangchuk Namba, and look forward to continuing to work with them and their community in the coming years. I also need to thank the Centre for Bhutan and GNH Studies for hosting me, and more broadly for their support on research on endangered languages in Bhutan.

I also wish to acknowledge the assistance of Dr Maurice Quirk, who provided feedback on grammar and style on the final version of this thesis.

I have, of course, relied on the support of my incredible friends throughout my academic journey, who will have to accept a simple list of names in the interest of space. My RPG groups, Ed, Sean, Zoe, Seb, Eddie, Aled, Izzy, Chis, Pace and Alexi, who have given me so many fond memories and told so many wonderful stories, the Tuesday night bouldering crew, Remi, Mo, Pei Yin, and the many other communities who have given me an escape from the insurmountable task (or so it felt at times) of writing this thesis. There are of course others who will have slipped through the cracks of these acknowledgements, but for them I am equally as thankful (and apologetic).

Lastly, I want to thank my family for their endless support. Ally and Karina, for their advice and attempts at understanding the topic, Drew, for his encouragement and unwavering patience with me, and of course, my parents, for their support and belief in me throughout my academic journey so far, and into the future.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Overview of this thesis . . . . .	2
1.2	Epistemic marking and the Trans-Himalayan family . . . . .	4
<b>2</b>	<b>Theoretical foundations</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	Introduction . . . . .	7
2.2	Definitions and previous research on epistemic marking . . . . .	7
2.2.1	Epistemic marking . . . . .	7
2.3	Theoretical underpinnings . . . . .	8
2.3.1	Perspective and point-of-view . . . . .	8
2.3.2	Propositions and metapropositions . . . . .	10
2.3.3	Subjectivity and Intersubjectivity . . . . .	11
2.4	Functional categories . . . . .	13
2.4.1	Epistemic Modality . . . . .	13
2.4.2	Evidentiality . . . . .	14
2.4.3	Egophoricity . . . . .	15
2.4.4	Mirativity . . . . .	16
2.4.5	Engagement . . . . .	17
2.4.6	Overlaps . . . . .	19
2.5	Paradigmatic and scattered systems . . . . .	19
2.5.1	Paradigmatic systems . . . . .	19
2.6	Theoretical approaches to speech act construction . . . . .	23
<b>3</b>	<b>Background of Trans-Himalayan languages</b>	<b>25</b>
3.1	Introduction . . . . .	25
3.2	History of research into Trans-Himalayan languages . . . . .	27
3.2.1	Pre-European scholarship . . . . .	27
3.2.2	European scholarship . . . . .	28
3.2.3	Dialects or languages? . . . . .	29

3.3	Current state of research . . . . .	30
3.3.1	State of description . . . . .	30
3.3.2	Situating the Sinitic branch in the family . . . . .	32
3.3.3	Name of the family . . . . .	34
3.3.4	Overview of subfamilies . . . . .	35
3.3.5	Comparison of proposed phylogenies . . . . .	37
3.4	Historical linguistics . . . . .	45
3.4.1	Ancient literary languages . . . . .	45
3.4.2	Reconstruction work . . . . .	47
3.5	Summary . . . . .	48
<b>4</b>	<b>Development of database</b>	<b>49</b>
4.1	Overview . . . . .	49
4.2	Collection . . . . .	49
4.2.1	Developing a representative sample . . . . .	49
4.2.2	Challenges in the use of external analyses . . . . .	55
4.3	Data collation . . . . .	57
4.3.1	Database overview . . . . .	57
4.3.2	Scope and form . . . . .	58
4.3.3	Function of marking . . . . .	59
4.3.4	Described addressee-perspective . . . . .	60
4.3.5	Other features . . . . .	61
4.3.6	Worked database entry . . . . .	62
4.3.7	Languages with conflicting analyses . . . . .	66
<b>5</b>	<b>Epistemic marking across the Himalayas</b>	<b>69</b>
5.1	Introduction . . . . .	69
5.2	Classifications of the data . . . . .	70
5.2.1	Classification introduction . . . . .	70
5.2.2	By forms . . . . .	70
5.2.3	By functions . . . . .	79
5.3	Summary . . . . .	91
<b>6</b>	<b>Historical development</b>	<b>95</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	95
6.1.1	Overview of chapter . . . . .	95
6.1.2	Schematising epistemics . . . . .	96
6.2	Mapping the data . . . . .	98

6.2.1	Map . . . . .	98
6.2.2	Discussion, initial patterns . . . . .	99
6.3	Historical contact . . . . .	100
6.3.1	Introduction . . . . .	100
6.3.2	Bhutan, Sikkim . . . . .	101
6.3.3	Arunachal Pradesh . . . . .	101
6.3.4	North-East India . . . . .	102
6.3.5	Central Himalayas, Nepal . . . . .	102
6.3.6	Western Himalayas . . . . .	103
6.3.7	Yunnan, Sichuan . . . . .	103
6.3.8	Northern Flank of Tibet . . . . .	104
6.3.9	Myanmar . . . . .	104
6.4	Map patterns in social historical context . . . . .	105
6.4.1	Hypothesis 1: Tibetic contact and epistemic marking . . . . .	105
6.4.2	Hypothesis 2: Non-Trans-Himalayan contact and lack of epistemic marking	106
6.4.3	Outliers . . . . .	107
6.5	Further contributing factors . . . . .	109
6.5.1	Time scale . . . . .	109
6.5.2	Multilingualism . . . . .	109
6.5.3	Community size . . . . .	110
6.5.4	Shared forms . . . . .	111
6.6	Case studies . . . . .	113
6.6.1	Tibetic influence . . . . .	113
6.6.2	Arunachal Pradesh . . . . .	115
6.6.3	Evidential developments in Indo-Aryan languages . . . . .	117
6.6.4	Lisu . . . . .	117
6.7	Conclusion . . . . .	118
7	<b>Discussion</b>	120
7.1	Introduction . . . . .	120
7.1.1	Chapter overview . . . . .	120
7.2	Mixed systems . . . . .	121
7.2.1	Theoretical foundations . . . . .	121
7.2.2	Case studies . . . . .	123
7.3	Social conditions . . . . .	136
7.3.1	Theoretical foundations . . . . .	136
7.3.2	Challenges . . . . .	138
7.3.3	Case studies . . . . .	139

7.4	Reference to perspective . . . . .	146
7.4.1	Deixis and epistemic marking . . . . .	146
7.4.2	The origo . . . . .	148
7.4.3	Analysing perspectives . . . . .	154
7.5	Functional motivations for the development of epistemic marking . . . . .	155
7.6	Conclusion . . . . .	159
<b>8</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>	<b>161</b>
8.1	Epistemic marking as a cross-linguistic supercategory . . . . .	161
8.2	Limitations . . . . .	165
8.3	Further research . . . . .	166
<b>A</b>	<b>Field work and original data collection</b>	<b>168</b>
A.1	Lhokpu . . . . .	168
A.2	Field Methods and Elicitation Activities . . . . .	169
A.2.1	Family Problems Picture Task . . . . .	169
A.2.2	Man and Tree Picture Sets . . . . .	170
A.3	Outcomes . . . . .	172
<b>B</b>	<b>Table of Languages</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>Static Database</b>	<b>179</b>

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Overview of this thesis

The study of cross-linguistic functional categories such as evidentiality, egophoricity, epistemic modality, engagement, and mirativity is a growing field in linguistics, seeing a huge rise in number of publications over the forty years since Chafe & Nichols (1986) made a case for evidentiality as a cross-linguistic category. This thesis provides a typological overview of these categories within the Trans-Himalayan language family, a language family showing widespread epistemic marking and home to many of the languages which informed our early understanding of these categories. It uses published data and analyses of epistemic marking in 67 Trans-Himalayan languages,<sup>1</sup> and original data and analysis of one language, to draw up an initial typological description of this marking in the family. This foundation is then used to establish some broader theoretical conclusions about epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan family and cross-linguistically. It argues for a cross-linguistically valid supercategory of epistemic marking (introduced in 1.2 below) linking these traditionally similar-but-separate functional categories visible throughout the Trans-Himalayan family both functionally and formally, and presents this category of epistemic marking as better able to account for some features of these grammatical systems described in Trans-Himalayan languages.

This thesis is divided into seven chapters. This first chapter provides an overview of the thesis and its argument, followed by an overview of the literature and relevant definitions on important and relevant concepts such as epistemic marking, intersubjectivity, and perspective in language in Chapter 2. Chapter 3 gives an in-depth introduction to the Trans-Himalayan language family, including an overview of the family, the current state of research and description, and the history of linguistic research in the area. Chapter 4 details the development of a database of summarised descriptions of Trans-Himalayan languages in terms of the selection of languages and

---

<sup>1</sup>A full list is given in Appendix B

data, along with its representation in an accessible and comparable format. Chapter 5 presents an initial description of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages from the data, providing a number of typological observations in terms of the forms and functions of grammaticalised epistemic marking across the family. Chapter 6 uses the substantial amount of typological data now collected to investigate possible pathways for the development of the widespread epistemic marking seen across the Trans-Himalayan family in historical terms, considering both linguistic and extra-linguistic factors such as population contacts through trade or political influence. Chapter 7 takes the typological observations in Chapter 5, along with the view of the family established in Chapter 6, and draws more in-depth theoretical conclusions about epistemic marking both in Trans-Himalayan languages and more generally. Finally, Chapter 8 concludes with a summary of the arguments and findings presented in the earlier chapters. Two appendices are included. Appendix A describes the fieldwork conducted on the underdescribed language Lhokpu (Subfamily unclear: Bhutan) to fill in a gap in the available data, including a discussion on the field methods and elicitation of epistemic marking, and an early-stages description of the epistemic marking system in the language. Appendix B provides a table of all languages systematically surveyed as described in Chapter 4.

In order to ensure better coverage of the Trans-Himalayan family in this survey (discussed further in Section 4.2.1) and fill in a gap in the available data, as well as to analyse epistemic marking from a primary source and use this experience to better inform the use of secondary analyses, some fieldwork was conducted on the under-described Lhokpu language. Descriptive publication on the language are limited to Grollmann & Gerber (2018), a comparison of a word list and some basic grammatical forms with Dhimal and Toto (Dhimalish: Nepal and India respectively), which did not provide enough detail to include it in the survey. This fieldwork, detailed in Appendix A, allowed for the language to be included in the survey though its findings are at this stage still very preliminary. It also allowed for an assessment of methodologies in the documentation and description of epistemic forms, and provided better insights into the complexity of epistemic marking in discourse, in part guiding the direction of the investigation and analysis presented in this thesis.

Given the number of languages across the Trans-Himalayan family discussed throughout this thesis, language names will be presented with their subfamily (as per van Driem (2014), see Sections 3.3.4 and 4.2.1 for discussions on the subfamily structure of the family) along with the country in which they are spoken, for example Hyow (Kukish: Myanmar, Zakaria 2018). In cases where a language is not clearly a member of a wider subfamily, it is labelled as either *Internal isolate* if the classification has been determined by substantial research (e.g. Tshangla (Internal isolate: Bhutan, Grollmann 2020)) or *Subfamily unclear* if this is due to a lack of research.

## 1.2 Epistemic marking and the Trans-Himalayan family

This thesis argues, most centrally, that epistemic marking appears across the Trans-Himalayan family can be analysed as a single, functionally cohesive, cross-linguistic category subsuming a number of traditional cross-linguistic categories. This epistemic marking supercategory is represented in this thesis as a strategy for the establishment of shared epistemic ground between speech act participants in the context of the speech act across the Trans-Himalayan family, specifically through the coordination of claims over epistemic authority over information. While this core functional motivation appears widespread across the family, there is a great deal of variation in the division of the gradient of epistemic authority into contrastive epistemic bases and the specific contextual factors that condition their use. Despite this wide variation across the family both formally and functionally, epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan language regularly exists functionally across the boundaries of traditional descriptive or cross-linguistic categories, with these cross-categorical meanings encoded either within a single form and epistemic base, or by contrastive forms within a single epistemic-marking system.

Language use, especially speech and conversation, necessarily exists in a context rich environment. The speech act participants (being the speaker and addressee(s)) always have some relationship with the proposition under discussion, in the form of knowledge, awareness, and opinions relating the content of the proposition in the context in which it is being spoken. For instance, a speaker has just noticed a small dog across the road, and points it out to their addressee. Here, the speaker is confident in the truth of their statement, as they can see the dog directly, though may perhaps be surprised to have seen it in this given context. These factors form part of the relationship of the speaker to the proposition they are stating. The addressee also will have a contextually dependent relationship to the proposition; for instance, whether or not they had also seen the dog and were already aware of it, whether or not they also find its presence surprising, and whether or not they would be able to see it directly, now it has been brought to their attention. In many languages, these relationships are not directly encoded in the speech act by default, though in some cases, they can also be seen reflected grammatically or lexically either in every speech act or in specific marked contexts. This grammaticalised marking of the relationship between speaker, addressee, and the information at hand (the proposition) is widespread in the Trans-Himalayan family, as has been addressed in a substantial body of literature to date (Aikhenvald 2004, Hill & Gawne 2017). This thesis argues that this marking, including the cross-linguistic categories of EVIDENTIALITY, EPISTEMIC MODALITY, EGOPHORICITY, MIRATIVITY, and ENGAGEMENT, can be analysed in Trans-Himalayan languages as forming a coherent functional domain and category, at the very least for comparative purposes. While these are all well-established categories in the literature—introduced in Section 2.2 with definitions and literature reviews—their occurrence in Trans-Himalayan languages is characterised by a great deal of overlap in formal and functional terms. In particular, MIXED SYSTEMS, in which a single

cohesive system of epistemic marking (such as a single paradigm) reflects meanings across, for instance, evidentiality, engagement, and egophoricity, are widespread. These systems are difficult to analyse without considering these previously more separate cross-linguistic categories under a single umbrella. Previous attempts to account for this in Tibetic and East Bodish languages in particular include DeLancey (1997, 2018), Gawne (2017), Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012), Hill (2012), and Hyslop (2014b), though none have done so under the framework of a single, more unified functional category covering the more general meaning of the relationship between speech act participants and the proposition. Additionally, the functional overlaps between these categories have been explored in more individual terms throughout the literature, presented in Section 2.4.6. This thesis proposes this higher order functional domain as marking a broader category of EPISTEMIC meaning, in turn being referred to EPISTEMIC marking. In reflecting the relationship of both speech act participants (the speaker and addressee) to the speech act itself, an important part of the discussion of epistemic marking then is reference to the perspectives of these two speech act participants. A well-established aspect of this attention to perspective is the shift from a reflection of the perspective of the speaker to that of the addressee when moving from a declarative structure to an interrogative one (Aikhenvald 2004: 242, San Roque et al. 2018), perhaps as a predictable outcome of the pragmatics of conversation (Hill 2020). However, as Chapter 7 argues, the reflection of the perspectives of the speaker and addressee is much more complex and pervasive than previous analysis would suggest, and that in fact conversation more generally always involves an assessment by the speaker of their own perspective, along with a projection or assessment of the perspective of their addressee and potentially other individuals such as characters in narratives.

A further key concept that is referenced throughout the literature on the individual categories listed above, in particular with regards to engagement (Evans et al. 2018a), is that of epistemic authority. In analysing epistemic marking as a single functional category as presented in this thesis, it becomes clear that the functional contrasts marked within a single system in a language can generally, if not always, be placed on a gradient of how strongly the speaker is claiming authority over the information at hand (or, in cases such as interrogatives, granting said authority to the addressee), as argued specifically for evidentiality by Bergqvist & Grzech (2023). While there is a great deal of variation in the specific factors of context surrounding a given speech act that can influence exactly where boundaries are drawn along this gradient, this trend provides both further support for their grouping as a single functional domain, as well as a useful tool for their analysis, discussed further in Sections 5.2.3.2 and 7.2. These characteristics, along with the widespread nature of the marking and the more general tendency for the marking to spread areally (Aikhenvald 2004), suggest a core functional motivation behind the marking of this epistemic meaning of the support of smooth conversation by establishing a shared ground between speech act participants regarding their respective knowledge surrounding a proposition, along with the nature of this knowledge, discussed further in Section 7.5. As will be discussed in more detail,

this in line with the work of Heritage (2012). These motivations, however, are tied to the function of the marking, and are by no means restricted to Trans-Himalayan languages or even the grammaticalised forms of epistemic marking under investigation in this thesis; however could be applied more widely to language and conversation in general.

While typological surveys of some of the categories introduced above have been undertaken at a worldwide scale, perhaps most notably Aikhenvald (2004), as well as smaller surveys such as Evans et al. (2018a,b), no large cross-linguistic surveys of epistemic marking more broadly has been conducted within the Trans-Himalayan family. An exception to this is Gawne (2021), a typological survey that focussed only on reportative evidential marking across the family. Despite the prevalence of epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family, no survey has been undertaken to take stock of the marking across the family as a whole and to attempt to describe observed variation and trends. As more and more attention is paid to epistemic marking, the lack of such a broad investigative overview will hinder the ability of researchers to place their research on a single language within a much larger typological context, going beyond that of the immediate siblings or neighbours of the language. In undertaking such a survey, this thesis throws a wide net in two areas. Firstly, it develops a database representative of the marking across the entire Trans-Himalayan family. That does not mean that it is surveying every language in the family, a task that is impossible at with the current state of description as described in Section 3.3.1 and within the scope of this thesis. Rather, it is sampling across the family as evenly as possible given the current research in order to avoid missing any particularly noteworthy or aberrant cases without knowing in advance where they will be. This sampling is discussed in detail in Section 4.2.1. Secondly, this thesis is not limited to a single functional element or even traditional epistemic category, as with Gawne (2021) and Aikhenvald (2004) respectively. Rather, it takes a more general view of the functional domain, arguing for an analysis of epistemic marking as a category unto itself as a supercategory over evidentiality, epistemic modality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement, and arguing against the analysis of these categories as functionally and theoretically completely separate.

# **Chapter 2**

## **Theoretical foundations**

### **2.1 Introduction**

This chapter provides some theoretical foundations of concepts that will be used and addressed throughout the thesis, reviewing previous research and definitions to provide a theoretical foundation for its analysis. It introduces and defines the term epistemic marking as a supercategory, encompassing the categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement (Section 2.2), the validity of which is argued by this thesis. Section 2.3 defines and discusses three important theoretical topics upon which conclusions will be drawn; namely, research into perspective-marking, the distinction between proposition and metaproposition, and the terms subjective and intersubjective and their histories.

Section 2.4 introduces and defines the categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement, considering the history of research into the concepts and the current state of the literature both within the Trans-Himalayan family and more generally. Finally, 2.6 provides a brief foundation into the description of speech acts and the underlying functional content of forms as they are used in discussion in this chapter, specifically presenting two descriptive construals of the process behind the selection of forms. These two construals are not different in any real terms beyond their conceptualisation of the process, allowing for better explanation throughout this chapter.

### **2.2 Definitions and previous research on epistemic marking**

#### **2.2.1 Epistemic marking**

Epistemic marking and meaning are growing areas of study in pragmatics, and in linguistics more generally. The term is used here to refer to a number of cross-linguistically observable phenomena in which speakers place themselves, as well as the addressee, in the context of the

information they are communicating. That is, it is a function through which the speaker can mark the relationship of themselves, the addressee, or both, to the proposition at hand and its content.

These cross-linguistically observable phenomena, as described by current literature, are EVIDENTIALITY, a category marking<sup>1</sup> the speaker's source of information (San Roque 2019); EPISTEMIC MODALITY, marking the confidence or epistemic support from a speaker over a given piece of information (Boye 2012); EGOPHORICITY, a category marking personal authority of a speaker over the information being presented (San Roque et al. 2018); MIRATIVITY, marking (at least by definition) a speaker's surprise or lack of previous awareness over the information (DeLancey 2012); and ENGAGEMENT, marking the joint "access", or awareness of and physical proximity to, the information being presented (Evans et al. 2018a,b).

The term *epistemic*, introduced in Section 1.2 above, is not necessarily a perfect term for this specific set of phenomena, but is the closest fit available. While the term has potentially more restricted meaning in other fields, notably philosophy (see Boye (2012: 15-18)), it functions suitably as a descriptive term covering the phenomena and meanings under investigation in this thesis.

As previously established, this project will focus on the related phenomena of evidentiality, epistemic modality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement. All of these phenomena clearly exhibit features of either subjectivity, intersubjectivity, or both. However, these terms alone are insufficient to either accurately characterise the categories themselves, or to separate them out from the wider field of (inter)subjectivity. It will also be argued that *intersubjectivity* alone is an inaccurate label by current literature, and a term already burdened with an excess of different meanings. Each of the phenomena have been researched to various extents on their own, as have interactions between pairs of them in specific languages, though no study of all four has been undertaken to date.

## 2.3 Theoretical underpinnings

### 2.3.1 Perspective and point-of-view

The terms PERSPECTIVE and POINT-OF-VIEW are used largely interchangeably in this thesis. The terms are used here to refer simply to the possible differences in awareness between individuals in conversation because of their different experiences, knowledge, and current attention. In this sense, the perspective of an individual is a reflection of the state-of-mind of said individual, and is interchangeable with the term point-of-view. This practice is in line with usage in literature such as Evans (2005), Sweetser (2012), and Bergqvist (2017).

An awareness of the role of perspective in language is by no means a recent development. Kamio (1997) is a foundational piece of literature investigating this, suggesting that a speaker and

---

<sup>1</sup>All meanings are given here in relation to their usage in assertions, and in a typical sense. It is not uncommon for patterns to vary in interrogative constructions (Aikhenvald 2018).

addressee and their different perspectives can be described in terms of *territories of information*. In this framework, developed by Kamio in his research on Japanese grammar over the preceding two decades, a given piece of information can be seen as falling in the territory of the speaker or addressee, or somewhere in between. It is on this foundational concept of the unequal authority over knowledge that much of the analysis of this thesis is based. Extensions of this notion in similar terms have been presented more recently; for instance, Heritage (2012), who draws a link between Kamio's territories of information and epistemic meaning, particularly in relation to the construction of interrogative meaning beyond simple grammatical interrogative markers. More recently still, González Pérez (2023) describes a similar concept of *spheres of interest*, further including spatial and attentional factors in the description of the perspectives of the speaker and addressee. Early literature, however, had a tendency to view the reflection of perspective as an “either/or” situation, as noted in Evans (2005) in his analysis of the marking of multiple perspectives in Australian languages. Here, Evans seeks to prove initially that multiple perspective constructions are present across multiple languages and can be found in all major semantic categories. These constructions allow a speaker to take two perspectives (for example, and likely most relevantly here, speaker and addressee) at the same time, a clear precursor to engagement. Evans characterises the research as a “preliminary typology” (p. 93); interestingly, he suggests that multiple perspective constructions in which the speaker is granted a lower level of authority than the second perspective (e.g., you know this but I don't, or some object is near you but not me) are uncommon. Both of these forms are later attested in Evans et al. (2018a).

To an extent, much of the literature on perspectives, and in particular the representation of multiple perspectives following Evans (2005) acted as growing field of study that eventually resulted in the description of *engagement* as a cross-linguistic category in Evans et al. (2018a,b). This includes the work of Henrik Bergqvist, who wrote first on Kogi (Arwako-Chichan: Colombia) in Bergqvist (2016), then expanded his work on tying perspectives to epistemic marking in Bergqvist (2017). While Evans (2005) also suggests a separation between his “multiple perspectives” and structures such as evidentials and epistemic modals, which he refers to as “metaperspectives” (p. 115), Bergqvist (2017) investigates the crossover between these areas, suggesting that these multiple perspective constructions are, much like evidentiality, also epistemic in nature, referring to the category later called engagement as *complex epistemic perspective*. This subsequently led to the development of engagement in descriptive work such as San Roque (2015), which presents a (later termed) engagement paradigm in Duna (Trans-New-Guinea: Papua New Guinea) and suggests that the marking might work discursively to maintain common ground between speech act participants.

In these cases, reference to multiple perspectives is largely seen as a typologically uncommon and noteworthy construction. Sweetser (2012) suggests, in part informed by neurological evidence and in part by linguistic evidence from English, that a consideration of multiple per-

spectives is unavoidable in discourse. This suggestion is further argued in Zeman (2019) in both discursive and grammatical terms, though here it regards to constructions referencing the perspective of speaker and a narrative character, rather than speaker and addressee. The proposed universality of multiple perspective reference is also argued in Chapter 7 of this thesis.

Beyond Evans et al. (2018a,b), much of the literature on reflection of perspective, and in particular multiple perspectives and its grammaticalised marking, is specifically framed in terms of engagement, a review of which is given in Section 2.4.5 below.

### 2.3.2 Propositions and metapropositions

*Proposition*, contrasted with METAPROPOSITION below, is used to refer to part of the speech act that is “in-narrative”, or unconcerned with the context of the speaker. By extension, and extending the use of the term in Evans et al. (2018b: 150), METAPROPOSITION refers to second-order information, or information given by the speaker about the proposition, but not actually affecting the proposition itself. The INFORMATION is the content of the (meta)proposition—that is, the actual semantic content being communicated. This can be seen in (1). Here, (a-b) are plain propositions. The addition of the adverbial construction “on foot” changes the meaning of the proposition itself in that it changes (or specifies) the actual event being described. Example (c), however, shows the same proposition, with a metaproposition “I saw that” providing information about the speaker’s relationship to the proposition, but not causing any changes to the information in the proposition itself (i.e. the narrative that he went to the shops remains unchanged).

- (1)    a. He went to the shops.
- b. He went to the shops on foot.
- c. I saw that {He went to the shops.}

When used in assertions, the categories introduced above mark metapropositional information from the speaker’s point-of-view (e.g. (1c). Its metapropositional meaning could be encoded through evidential markers in languages with such marking). However, this is not necessarily always the case, as will be discussed in more detail in Sections 2.4.2-2.4.5 below. As a result of this potential shifting of reference, the term ORIGO is used in this thesis to refer to the perspective from which the metapropositional information is being presented, following Garrett (2001)<sup>2</sup> and discussed in detail in Section 7.4.2. That is, as in (2) from Lhasa Tibetan, the egophoric (or personal authority) evidential *yin* (ཡິນ) remains the same in assertions and questions, showing a speaker origo in assertions and an addressee origo in questions. While in (2a) the speaker is stating their own experience, in (2b) the speaker is asking the addressee for their personal authority.

---

<sup>2</sup>Garrett attributes this term to the work of Karl Bühler, who in turn borrows it from its usage to refer to the centre point of the Cartesian plane (Buehler1965).

- (2) a. nga bod=pa yin  
     1sg Tibetan **be.EGO**  
     ‘I am Tibetan.’ (Personal Authority Evidential/Egophoric, Speaker-Origo)
- b. khyed=rang bod=pa yin=pas  
     2sg Tibetan **be.EGO-INTERROGATIVE**  
     ‘Are you Tibetan?’ (Personal Authority Evidential/Egophoric, Addressee-Origo)

Lhasa Tibetan (Tibetic: PRC, DeLancey 2017: 394), function/origo labelling mine

### 2.3.3 Subjectivity and Intersubjectivity

The concept of intersubjectivity is, at least in its development, a theoretical extension of research into *subjectivity*, examining the linguistic devices that highlight the speaker as an agentive entity and allow the speaker to orient themselves within the context of the speech act. These are the methods through which speakers can convey their own perspective in addition to the “objective”, propositional component of meaning (Finegan 1995). At a narrower level of focus, however, the term *subjectivity* is used for a number of different purposes and varied analytical frameworks. These disparate uses of the term are mentioned as early as Finegan (1995), who establishes two key schools of usage. The first, developed by Lyons (1982), fits closely with the above description, and has been developed into a field of diachronic study focussing on the development of subjectivity through grammaticalisation by Traugott (1995). The other school discussed by Finegan (1995) is one introduced by Langacker (1985), approaching the problem of subjectivity synchronically through a Cognitive Grammar lens, a framework introduced below.

If subjectivity is the process through which a speaker can establish their perspective or mind-set in speech, *intersubjectivity* refers to strategies through which the speaker can work to coordinate their perspective with the perspective of their interlocutor (Brems et al. 2014).

The multiple frameworks working under the term (INTER)SUBJECTIVITY are still treated as largely independent, being discussed in Brems et al. (2014) in terms of their attention to intersubjectivity. The Traugott and Cognitive Grammar frameworks are characterised in their current form most succinctly by Nuyts (2015), who describes the Cognitive Grammar framework as a binary distinction measuring the speaker’s presence in an utterance; that is, whether or not the speaker and the speaker’s perspective act as a deictic referent in the utterance. Nuyts provides (3) as an example of this binary, in which (3a) is objective and (3b) is subjective.<sup>3</sup> A more subtle example of this can be seen in (4), showing the same pattern but without the need for an explicit first person reference due to the implication of the speaker as the deictic centre in the phrase “across the table”. That is, by introducing a point of comparison without any explicit reference point, the speaker is assumed (‘from me’).

- (3) a. Mary is sitting at the table. (Objective)

---

<sup>3</sup>(3a) contains no reference to the speaker or their position in the scenario (they may not even be present, or, in the case of a narrative, they may not exist in the same world as Mary) while (3b) places the speaker in the scenario.

b. I see Mary sitting at the table. (Subjective)

(Nuyts 2015: 107)

(4) a. Mary is sitting at the table. (Objective)

b. Mary is sitting across the table (from me). (Subjective)

The Traugott framework is characterised inversely as describing an inherent semantic trichotomy ascribed to any given linguistic form—that is, that a form can be objective (referring to “objects, events, and their properties” (Nuyts 2015: 107)), subjective (referring to “speaker evaluations of things in the world” (p.107)) and intersubjective, which is missing from Nuyts’ description but can be classified as referring to speaker’s evaluations of the addressee.

While these frameworks offer a useful foundation and background through which to investigate evidentiality, epistemic modality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement, neither one is intended specifically to account for these phenomena. Additionally, Traugott’s research is primarily diachronic in nature, assessing the shift over time of a single linguistic unit from objective to subjective, and in turn to more intersubjective, processes referred to as *subjectification* and *intersubjectification* (Traugott 1995, 2014). The Cognitive Grammar framework is also lacking, in that the presence of the perspectives of the speaker and addressee in utterances—a distinction core to the Cognitive Grammar framework per Nuyts (2015)—is fundamentally not applicable to this research in which it is argued that both are always present.

Concepts from both frameworks are used in this study. Cognitive Grammar refers to the methods used to *ground* the speech act, or to tie it to its physical context. This metaphorical *ground* refers to “the speech event, its participants (speaker and hearer), their interaction, and the immediate circumstances (notably, the time and place of speaking)” (Langacker 2008: 259). It is to elements within this ground then that deictic speech elements refer, the subjects of this project included. The ground is, however, separate from the deictic centre or origo of a given deictic element, in that the ground is the wider context in which the speech act is occurring, while the deictic centre or origo is the object within that context to which the deictic element refers. Using the temporal deictic adverb ‘now’ as an example, in a sentence such as ‘I am going home now’, my environment as the speaker, including location, time, and the nature of both interlocutors, would be the ground referred to by ‘now’, while the element of the ground, here the current time, is the deictic centre.

Similarly, there are typological trends noted by Traugott on the development of subjective and intersubjective forms through semantic shifts that may inform diachronic assessments in the later stages of this project. There is a noted trend towards subjectification occurring at the left periphery of the speech act and intersubjectification occurring at the right,<sup>4</sup> though this is

---

<sup>4</sup>That is, subjective forms tend to occur first (e.g., English ‘hopefully, we can go home soon’), while intersubjective forms tend to come last (e.g., English ‘We can go home soon, right?’).

by no means a universal observation (Traugott 2014). In addition to this, in his seminal paper on subjectivity, Lyons (1982) suggests that subjective meaning operates on a separate truth condition to the objective meaning of the same speech act. One can negate the objective meaning without necessarily negating the subjective component; a fact useful for operationalising the division between the two parts of meaning. Ghesquière et al. (2014) also address this as a possible feature of intersubjective elements as well.

Due to the arguably overburdened nature of the term (inter)subjectivity, specifically with its varied uses in related but distinct literature, its usage will be limited here, with reference to the point-of-view or perspective of the speaker being described as such directly as introduced in Section 2.3.1. Additionally, the proposal that attention to the perspective of both speech act participants, which could be described as intersubjective, is widespread at both a cognitive and grammatical level throughout speech, as argued in Chapter 7, means that these terms will have less use as a set of contrastive descriptors than in other fields or literature.

## 2.4 Functional categories

### 2.4.1 Epistemic Modality

Epistemic Modality refers to the marking of epistemic support for a given proposition by the speaker. It is defined against evidentiality by Palmer (2001: 8), who contrasts epistemic and evidential modality as marking the “judgements about the factual status of the proposition” and “the evidence they have for its factual status”, as well as by Boye (2012: 36), who uses the terms “epistemic support” and “epistemic justification” for epistemic modality and evidentiality in his argument for a supercategory of “epistemicity” defined as “justificatory support”. Research into epistemic modality predates the other categories here substantially, potentially due to its presence in (as the name might suggest) modal verbs in Germanic languages. Lyons (1977: 793) notes that the term descends from the philosophical study of epistemics, concerned with the nature and justification of knowledge as opposed to its support by the speaker here. There is some variation in the exact terminology used to describe the bases of an epistemic modal contrast, Boye (2012: 21) noting the use of descriptions such as the degree of “certainty”, “commitment”, or “confidence” and Palmer (2001: 25) noting the use of “dubiative” and “speculative” with similar meaning. Despite this, the core function of marking support for a proposition on a scale of full support to neutral support (with full support being either positive or negative dependent on other grammar) is widely shared and well researched in the literature.

#### 2.4.2 Evidentiality

Evidentiality refers to the marking of information sources, here limited to meaning encoded grammatically. In its broadest sense, the term can be used to describe grammatical or periphrastic constructions (San Roque 2019), such as English constructions “I saw that...” (marking visual evidence), or “Apparently...” (often marking hearsay evidence), as well as stricter grammaticalised systems. In these stricter systems, the same information would be conveyed by a paradigm of, for instance, verbal suffixes marking visual, aural, inferential, hearsay, or general-knowledge-based sources of information, which may or may not be compulsory. It is this grammaticalised and paradigmatic marking of evidentiality that is of interest to this project. Theoretically speaking, any language has the capability of marking information sources periphrastically (San Roque 2019), a fact which will be discussed in Section 7.5.

Evidentiality as a discrete, definable, and cross-linguistic category was first introduced in 1986, in the edited volume *Evidentiality: The Linguistic Coding of Epistemology* (Chafe & Nichols 1986). This volume is a collection of descriptions of evidential systems in languages from around the world (with a specific focus on languages from the Americas), and includes chapters on two Trans-Himalayan, specifically Tibetic languages: Tibetan (DeLancey 1986) and Sherpa (Woodbury 1986). The volume does not offer a single, concise definition for evidentiality, on the grounds that the research was still in its infancy. The general concept of evidentiality has, however, been known to linguistics for quite some time longer. Dendale & Tasmowski (2001) suggest that the earliest reference to grammaticalised marking of information source may have been as early as 1911 and 1921 in the research of Boas and Sapir. Aikhenvald (2004) reports that languages with evidentials, such as Quechua, had been studied and documented as early as the mid-16th century, but that the evidentials were simply dismissed as “ornate particles with no meaning of their own” (p.12). Since Chafe & Nichols (1986), there have been a number of volumes focussed on evidentiality, which, with the greater body of research to support them, are useful for cross-linguistic theoretical and typological observations (Dendale & Tasmowski 2001). Aikhenvald is responsible for a number of major contributions to the study of evidentiality, namely Aikhenvald (2004), the first single-author book devoted to the theory and typology of evidentiality as had been uncovered in the years since Chafe & Nichols (1986), and Aikhenvald (2018), an edited volume on numerous aspects of the theoretical foundations and implications of evidentiality, as well as a substantial section on language family-specific descriptions. Of particular relevance to this project are their chapters on evidentiality as it is found in Tibetan, and subfamilies such as West Himalayish, East Bodish, Tamangic, Magaric, Newaric, Kiranti, as well as some other small groups spoken in Nepal and Bhutan (DeLancey 2018, Hyslop 2018a). Of the phenomena in the scope of this project, evidentiality is by some margin the oldest in the literature, and as a result by some margin the most widely researched. It is also likely the most widely identified, though it is difficult to say whether or not this is a result of its greater level of research, or potentially a cause thereof.

### 2.4.3 Egophoricity

Egophoricity generally refers to the marking of “personal or privileged knowledge or involvement” in a given proposition (San Roque et al. 2018: 2). Coined by Tournadre (1992), analysis of this phenomenon date further back to *conjunct/disjunct* systems in Kathmandu Newar (Newaric: Nepal, Hale 1980). Egophoricity as a term may refer to a general phenomenon of flagging speaker involvement in, or personal connection to, a given proposition. However, as with evidentiality (see 2.4.2), this project will focus only on grammaticalised forms of egophoric marking. Egophoricity as a category is, to this day, ill-defined in the literature, either needing to fit into a very restrictive (but widespread) typical distribution pattern to be classified as a true egophoric, or simply requiring the same general meaning of personal, volitional, or participatory support for a proposition (San Roque et al. 2018, Gawne 2017). The antonym for the term *egophoric* is similarly poorly defined, with various researchers using the terms *non-egophoric*, *alterphoric*, and *allophoric* for ostensibly the same thing (Widmer 2020). By virtue of its semantic content, grammatical egophoric marking, regardless of how strict the definition, exhibits a typologically visible *typical distribution*, whereby first-person statements are marked as egophoric (that is, that the speaker has authority over their own experiences), along with second-person questions (as the speaker is anticipating or requesting their interlocutor’s personal authority over their own experiences). All other cases would be marked as non-egophoric. This has already been shown in (2), and can be compared with (5), where neither the third-person statement ‘He is Tibetan’ nor the first-person question ‘Am I Tibetan?’ can be marked as egophoric, as in neither case can the origo (the speaker and addressee respectively) have personal authority over the matter.<sup>5</sup>

- (5) a. kho bod=pa red  
3sg.m Tibetan **be.NON\_EGO**  
‘He is Tibetan.’
- b. nga bod=pa red-pas  
1sg Tibetan **be.NON\_EGO-INTERROGATIVE**  
‘Am I Tibetan?’

Lhasa Tibetan (Tibetic: PRC, DeLancey 2017: 394)

A final case where a proposition might be marked as egophoric is in embedded clauses of indirect quotations, where the character of the indirect quote would have used the egophoric were they speaking directly (see (6)). When the subject of the quote is referring to themself ((6a)), the speaker would mark this with the egophoric form *wanā*, whereas when they are referring to someone else, and as such would not use the egophoric form in a direct quote, the speaker also uses the non-egophoric form *wana* ((6b)). This form could be seen as a Third-Person-Origo construction, though due to its very specific occurrence it is perhaps more useful to refer to it

---

<sup>5</sup>It is worth noting that the first-person question form (‘Am I Tibetan?’) is, in practice, uncommon, as it would take a very specific turn of events for an individual to need to question others about themselves.

specifically as a Character-Origo construction, wherein the third-person subject or *protagonist* of a proposition acts as the origo for some embedded proposition.

- (6) a. w || wa ana wan || dhak || dh || la  
     3sg-AGT 3sg there go.EGO that say.NON\_EGO  
     ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>i</sub> went there.’
- b. w || wa ana wana dhak || dh || la  
     3sg-AGT 3sg there go.NON\_EGO that say.NON\_EGO  
     ‘He<sub>i</sub> said that he<sub>j</sub> went there.’

Kathmandu Newar (Newaric, Nepal) (Hale 1980: 95) (Glosses adapted from Bergqvist & Knuchel 2017: 362)

There is a great deal of variation in the terminology surrounding egophoricity which continues to pose challenges to researchers attempting both to label newly discovered categories in a descriptive sense, but also for identifying potentially relevant categories for typological research. San Roque et al. (2018) list some nine different pairs of terms for what the authors settle on calling an “egophoric/non-egophoric” binary (p. 7). In addition to Hale’s “conjunction/disjunct”, these include “egophoric/alterphoric”, “locutor/non-locutor”, “subjective/objective”,<sup>6</sup> and “assertor’s involvement/non-assertor involvement” (San Roque et al. 2018: 8), among others. There is also a challenge in defining egophoricity, which can either be defined in a strict sense, restricted to only those paradigms following the egophoric standard distribution, or instead with a focus on similar function but potentially less fit with the standard distribution (San Roque et al. 2018). This problem is complicated further given that the closeness to which an ‘egophoric’ paradigm fits with the standard distribution can vary from village to village in a language area, as is seen in Amdo Tibetan (Tribur 2019). These challenges are addressed in Chapter 7.

#### 2.4.4 Mirativity

Originally defined by DeLancey (1997), mirativity refers to the grammaticalised marking of information as surprising or previously unknown to the speaker. It is similar to, but separate from, evidentiality in that it does not provide a specific source for the information, but rather suggests that it was suddenly or recently acquired. While it was initially defined as being limited to Speaker-Origo semantics, more recent studies have suggested that the core meaning of the mirative also appears in Addressee-Origo and Character-Origo constructions (Hengeveld & Olbertz 2012, Aikhenvald 2012). Aikhenvald (2012) offers a number of different documented interactions between miratives and interrogative structures, including rhetorical questions (p. 448), or marking a suggestion to the addressee that they ought to refer to “an action with a yet unknown result” (p. 452). This is notably at odds with the interrogative structures seen in conjunction with evidentiality and egophoricity, where the interrogative meaning prompted a shift of the origo

<sup>6</sup>I am particularly relieved that this one didn’t catch on given the discussion above regarding the already overburdened term subjectivity.

from Speaker to Addressee. Instead, here there appears to be typologically far more flexibility of the origo in declarative statements, with Aikhenvald (2012) providing an example from K'xa language !Xun (South-Western Africa), in which the cited form seems to be “objective” (p. 448), and suggests non-discriminate surprise for all, rather than being tied to a specific origo.

As noted above, mirativity was first coined by DeLancey (1997), though the term ADMIRATIVE had been used to describe a feature of Albanian at least Dozon (1879), with more contemporary research led by V. Friedman (1986) and V. A. Friedman (2003, 2012: among others). There is significant disagreement over the very existence of the mirative as a separate category, as opposed to a secondary meaning of a sensory evidential. This possibility was prominently raised by Hill (2012) in a special issue of *Linguistic Typology*, followed by a rigorous<sup>7</sup> set of articles discussing the suggestion. Hill (2012) attempts to provide alternate analyses for the various examples of mirativity given by DeLancey (1997) and Aikhenvald (2004). It is difficult at this stage to address this disagreement through analysing the evidence either way, mostly due to the large amount discussed. In order to skirt this challenge, at least for the time being, I will be taking researchers’ analyses as correct and accurate characterisations of the data, particularly in cases where miratives have been identified after the publication of Hill (2012). Examples in Kurtöp (East Bodish, Bhutan Hyslop 2017), Yakkha (Kiranti, Nepal Schackow 2015), and Khroskyabs (Rgyalrongic, PRC Lai 2017, Taylor-Adams & Lhawa 2020). While not rejecting the existence of mirativity altogether like Hill (2012), Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012) raise a number of valid points of revision on DeLancey’s original concept. Of greatest relevance to this project is DeLancey definition of mirativity as marking information as new or unexpected “in relation to the speaker” (Hengeveld & Olbertz 2012: 488), a definition which the authors disprove by identifying a counterexample in DeLancey (1997). In redefining mirativity with a more flexible origo, Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012) also find a basis to reject Hill’s (2012) assertion that certain examples of the mirative in narrative contexts (now seen to have addressee-origo rather than speaker-origo) could not be classified as such as the speaker by definition had to have prior access to the knowledge in order to retell it.

#### 2.4.5 Engagement

Unlike canonical evidentiality, egophoricity, and (standard) mirativity, engagement is unique in that it marks information from *both* the speaker’s and addressee’s perspective concurrently.<sup>8</sup> Namely, it marks the “access” (Evans et al. 2018a: 118) of the speaker and addressee to the referent, which can be propositional, or, in the case of some languages, nominal in scope. As per Evans et al. (2018a,b), access can refer to physical accessibility, i.e., closeness in a spatial sense, as well as mental accessibility, i.e., awareness and attentiveness. Engagement has not yet been

<sup>7</sup>If not heated.

<sup>8</sup>Though, as will be argued in Chapter 7, it is possible that concurrent reference to both speaker and addressee perspective is much more widespread than is described in the literature.

Table 2.1: Two-dimensional engagement paradigm in Andoke (Isolate, Colombia) (Evans et al. 2018a: 115-116)

	+spkr	-spkr
+addr	b-	k-
-addr	k $\emptyset$ -	bā-

identified in its prototypical form (that is, a paradigm marking exclusively engagement) in any Trans-Himalayan languages, though Evans et al. (2018b) do present an engagement-like paradigm in copulas in Kinnauri (West Himalayish: India), in which three copulas *to*, *du* and *ni* are used to mark speaker-access, speaker non-access, and two-dimensionally speaker-access/addressee-nonaccess respectively. A more prototypical example of engagement with a propositional scope is given in Evans et al. (2018a: 115-116) and Bergqvist & Knuchel (2019: 650), originally from Landaburu (2007), from the Andoke language, an isolate spoken in the Amazon. The four outcomes of the two-dimensional binary split can be seen in (7), summarised to highlight the two binary parameters of speaker and addressee access in Table 2.1.

- (7) a. dui  $\emptyset$  h  $\emptyset$  b-  $\emptyset$  dā-  $\emptyset$  -  $\emptyset$   
          whites +SPKR+ADDR.ENGAG-3PL INGR-move-3  
          ‘It’s the white arriving (as we can both witness).’
- b. dui  $\emptyset$  h  $\emptyset$  k  $\emptyset$ -  $\emptyset$  dā-  $\emptyset$  -  $\emptyset$   
          whites +SPKR-ADDR.ENGAG-3PL INGR-move-3  
          ‘It’s the white arriving (which I know / can witness but you can’t).’
- c. dui  $\emptyset$  h  $\emptyset$  k-  $\emptyset$  dā-  $\emptyset$  -  $\emptyset$   
          whites -SPKR+ADDR.ENGAG-3PL INGR-move-3  
          ‘Is that the whites arriving?’
- d. dui  $\emptyset$  h  $\emptyset$  bā-  $\emptyset$  dā-  $\emptyset$  -  $\emptyset$   
          whites -SPKR-ADDR.ENGAG-3PL INGR-move-3  
          ‘I wonder if those are the whites arriving.’

Andoke (Isolate, Colombia) (Evans et al. 2018a: 115-116)

Engagement is, by quite some margin, the most recently described phenomenon being investigated. The term was first coined as a cross-linguistic category in Evans et al. (2018a,b), a pair of papers discussing the theory and typological evidence for the combined marking of speaker/ addressee access to a given unit. Engagement notably has two documented forms: a form with referential scope, and one with propositional scope. The referential scope, while still carrying intersubjective information (in the sense that it still encodes information about the speaker’s assessment of the addressee’s state of mind), is markedly different from the other phenomena being discussed in that it refers to the shared access of speaker and addressee to an object, or nominal reference. The form with propositional scope, however, more closely aligns with the other categories, in that it marks the shared knowledge of a given proposition or event (Evans et al. 2018b). While the term engagement was coined as a cross-linguistic category very recently, research

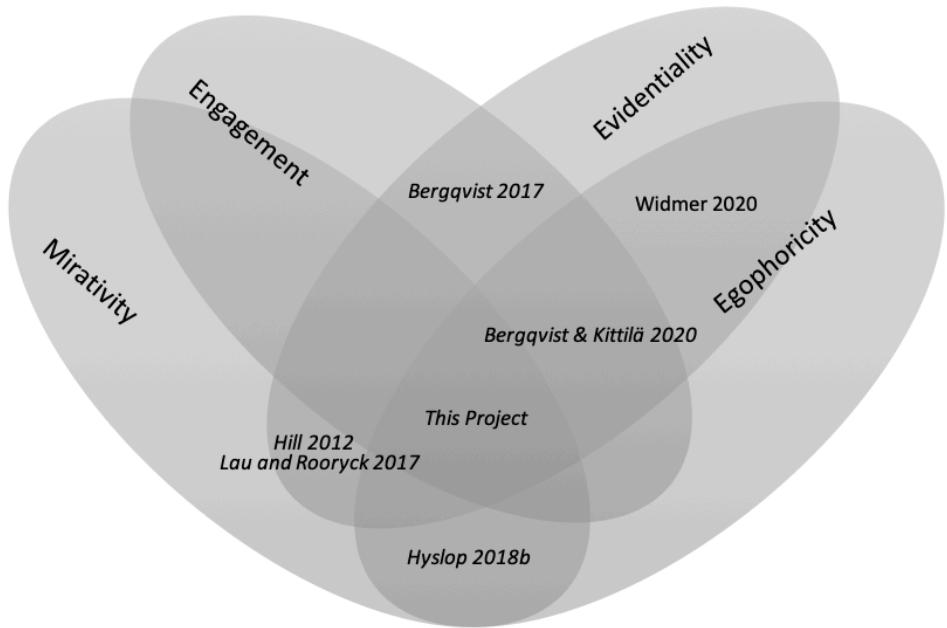


Figure 2.1: Examples of publications examining the crossovers between phenomena

into the language-specific categories that are now identified as Engagement has, of course, been around substantially longer. As discussed in detail in the literature review on perspectives in Section 2.3.1, research into the reflection of multiple perspectives can be traced further back to Evans (2005), and further back still to Kamio (1997).

#### 2.4.6 Overlaps

In the same sense that Bergqvist (2017) assesses a crossover between evidentiality and what would later be named engagement, the fields of evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement have all been tied together by individual comparisons. That said, no research has yet been undertaken to consider them as altogether. The theoretical links between these ideas can clearly be seen in the existence of these publications, examples of which are highlighted in Figure 2.1.

### 2.5 Paradigmatic and scattered systems

#### 2.5.1 Paradigmatic systems

Aikhenvald (2004) refers to a type of epistemic-marking system in which various epistemic (or, in the case of Aikhenvald (2004), evidential) bases are marked by grammatical forms across different domains of the grammar of a given language. I argue that this term of description is a gradient rather than a binary contrast. Paradigmatic systems here represent the opposite end of this gradient, in opposition to the scattered systems described by Aikhenvald. When contrasted

against the alternative type of system, the intended definition of this paradigmatic category is fairly clear; however, for the purposes of this thesis, a more explicitly stated definition of the term PARADIGM is more useful. As noted above, the two categories of paradigmatic and scattered systems do not exist in a true binary, but rather can be taken to be gradual. For example, in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan) as is discussed in a case study below, the epistemic system exists across multiple domain-restricted paradigms, as well as in a small number of forms that appear to exist outside these paradigms. As such, for the most part, the epistemic system in Kurtöp appears prototypically paradigmatic, but when factoring in these few clitics that can appear across multiple grammatical domains and in combination with the full epistemic-marking paradigms, it is not entirely so.

The term PARADIGM is widely used throughout linguistics and carries a generally accepted meaning, but specific definitions of such a basic term are harder to come by. Two levels of specificity appear to exist. On the one hand, definitions such as those in Aronoff & Fudeman (2023) and Trask (1993) frame the paradigm specifically as a set of inflected forms of a single stem. Others more broadly define the term as referring to any set of linguistic forms with a common property, such as, at an extreme, all nouns (Booij 2007). While Trask (1993) limits his definition to the use described by Blevins (2016), holding it as prevalent in pedagogically inclined literature, he does give a broader definition of “paradigmatic relation.” This he defines as “Any relation between two or more linguistic elements which are in some sense competing possibilities, in that exactly one of them may be selected to occupy some particular position in a structure” (Trask 1993: 197). Ultimately this concept dates back to Saussure’s contrast between syntagmatic and associative (or paradigmatic) relations (de Saussure n.d.).

The definition used here exists in-between these two. Generally it refers to the set of possible inflections of a given stem as given in Trask (1993), but skews toward the actual inflecting morphology rather than the composed forms. In this sense, it follows the more general Saussurean concept of paradigmatic relations as defined by Trask (1993) as sets of morphemes with any functional similarities. That is, in describing a set of forms as paradigmatic rather than scattered, they are described as contributing to the set of inflected forms available for a given stem, and as having their usage conditioned by a functionally coherent and similar factors. In practice, this first trait means that the forms in a paradigmatic system will occupy the same grammatical slot—whether that be as affixal morphology, clitics, or particles—in a given location within a sentence (often final). This leads to a working definition of a set of forms that can occupy the same grammatical slot (per the pedagogical use of paradigm) and also cover a functionally coherent set of meanings (per the Saussurean concept of paradigmatic relations). This definition is given in Figure 2.2. One challenge with Trask’s definition of paradigmatic relations, quoted above, is the necessity that these forms be mutually exclusive. In order for forms to occupy the same grammatical slot and in turn produce a neat set of inflected forms, this stipulation is understandable, but does not

Necessary traits of a grammatical paradigm:

- + Set of forms occupying the same grammatical slot
- + Set of functions falling under a coherent functional domain

Unnecessary but common traits:

- ? Forms within set are totally mutually exclusive

Figure 2.2: Working definition of paradigm.

consistently hold across the paradigmatic systems actually seen in the data. That is, systems that otherwise appear very paradigmatic have been documented to allow cooccurrence of forms. In Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC), which will be discussed as case study in greater detail below, epistemic suffixes that occupy the same grammatical slot can cooccur. In these cases, the origo of the epistemic meaning is traced back along the line of sources. For instance, the cooccurrence of the sensory and reportative forms marks that the current speaker knows the given information as they heard it from another, who in turn had first hand evidence. Despite this possibility, the system is still paradigmatic in that its forms still both occupy the same grammatical slot on the verb and carry meanings within the coherent domain of epistemic meaning.

There is a risk of a circular definition in terms of the coherent functional domain criterion. The presence of these paradigms is in part used in this thesis as proof that the meanings across these paradigms do fall into a coherent functional domain. At the same time the existence of the paradigm is defined against this coherent functional domain that is itself proven essentially by its presence across a single paradigm. This chapter aims, however, to show that this functional coherence can be seen outside of the basic fact that the forms exist in a paradigm; the same functional coherence is visible also in scattered systems. It also argues for the more general epistemic supercategory in terms beyond simple morphological structure and form.

There remains a final question of how to handle sets of forms which fulfil the first criterion, in that they occur in the same grammatical slot, but do not appear to a coherent functional domain. In Siyewu Khroskyabs (rGyalrongic: PRC), there is a large set of verbal prefixes that appear to occupy the same grammatical slot on the verb but which do not reflect a coherent functional domain (Taylor-Adams & Lhawa 2020: 34). They are specifically described as not being in paradigmatic opposition, as they can cooccur; though, as was discussed above, this is not seen here as an excluding factor. Functionally, these forms include the negative *ma-*, an interrogative *(t)cʰə(y)-*, an evidential *zə-*, among nine others. Here, despite being a set of forms that occupy the same grammatical slot, the lack of any functional coherence across the set precludes them from being considered a single paradigm; a conclusion which seems to logically hold. There is an interesting example in Poumai Naga (Angami-Pochuri: India), which has a set of sentence final markers that

occur after the verb in a similar formal position (Veikho 2021). Functionally, two of the forms are epistemic and the other three are tense/aspect related. While in isolation they appear to occupy the same grammatical slot, an interesting pattern appears when forms are combined. Specifically, any of the three T/A markers can cooccur with either of the epistemic markers, and when they do, the T/A forms must come before the epistemic ones for the construction to be considered grammatical (Veikho 2021: 278). That is, while either of the functional groups can grammatically occur in isolation, when they are combined it becomes apparent that in fact there are two different grammatical slots being filled, each of which shows a coherent functional domain and could therefore be considered a paradigm for the purposes of this analysis.

Mixed paradigmatic systems, then, are systems wherein sets of forms fulfil the criteria given in Figure 2.2; but more specifically, wherein the coherent functional domains extend beyond a single one of the discussed traditional cross-linguistic categories. As mentioned above, the validity of describing these broader sets of functions as following a coherent functional domain is argued throughout the rest of this chapter.

#### 2.5.1.1 Scattered systems

In the previous discussion on paradigmatic systems and the defintion of paradigm, situations discussed included a set of forms occupied a single grammatical slot but did not fall under a coherent functional domain. Scattered systems can be seen as the alternative to this, as forms do not occupy the same grammatical slot but can nonetheless be grouped according to their shared functional domain. It is argued above that the selection of forms within an epistemic system (or any set of functionally contrastive forms) is informed by an assessment of all conditioning factors relevant to the system. Part of the argument for the coherence of these sets of forms, and part of the justification for even considering them a single functional system is their functionally contrastive meanings. This is easy to see in paradigmatic systems, as forms exist contrastively both functionally and formally, in that they occupy the same grammatical slot and as such are more literally formally contrasted, even if strict mutual exclusivity is not being considered a necessary trait of a grammatical paradigm. This poses the question of whether or not this functional cohesion applies also to scattered systems, where epistemic contrasts are marked with formally disparate strategies. I argue that it does, as the functional content of the various epistemic-marking strategies in a scattered system is not inherently tied to the literal form of the marking. This is to say that, for example, a direct evidential suffix, a reportative evidential enclitic, and a non-shared information sentence-final particle are not influenced functionally—at least not in terms of their epistemic content—by their literal form. The difference in scope of, for instance, a suffix which attaches directly to the verb compared to an enclitic which attaches to a clause level, means that it would exist higher on the theoretical syntax tree that would be drawn of a speech act, creating some functional difference. It is not clear to me that this would have any impact specifically

on the epistemic meaning of the forms. As such, there is no reason, especially in cases where the epistemic-marking strategies of scattered epistemic systems do not cooccur, that they should not be considered equally as functionally contrastive, and in turn part of a functionally cohesive domain as with paradigmatic systems. A speaker producing an epistemically marked speech act, whether their language has a more paradigmatic or more scattered system, still must consider every applicable conditioning factor across the possible epistemic marking for that speech act in order to select the most correct form at the exclusion of others. The necessity of this process is not dependent on the formal similarity of the epistemic marking; the meanings are contrastive and therefore exist within a cohesive system regardless. In any given speech act, the speaker (though typically not consciously) considers every available communicative tool and selects the most relevant ones.

There is a challenge in terminology here, specifically in the use of the term ‘system’. Thus far, the ‘epistemic system’ or ‘epistemic-marking system’ has been used to refer to the whole set of grammatical epistemic-marking strategies across a language. While this generally involves specific markers, in some languages such as Milang (Siangic: India) these strategies might instead be syntactic (Modi 2017), though not periphrastic or lexical, as this project is specifically limited to grammatical marking. The epistemic-marking system of a language is not necessarily a single entity *per se*, and there can be multiple subsystems serving different domains of the grammar of a language. This is exemplified below in Kurtöp, which shows a predominantly paradigmatic epistemic-marking system across. The overall system can be divided into a number of subsystems, each serving in this case a different tense/aspect. There is one paradigm of epistemic marking for each of the future, the imperfective, and the perfective domains. As is discussed below, these paradigms are limited to different areas of the grammar and do not interact. They also do not mark the same set of epistemic contrasts, shown in Table 7.2. This is not difficult to describe with paradigmatic systems, as the so-called subsystems exist in discrete paradigms which can be described as such. With more scattered systems, however, this use of terminology is not so easy, as a domain-limited set of epistemic markers such as the various paradigms of Kurtöp would not exist in such an easily described set. This is less an issue of theory than it is one of terminology, but it remains that a term is needed to describe domain-restricted sets of scattered epistemic markers below the level of the system. Other literature has already used the term ‘subsystem’, namely Aikhenvald (2004), and as such the term will also be used here.

## 2.6 Theoretical approaches to speech act construction

Much of the analysis throughout this thesis, particularly in Chapter 7, discusses the internal process of constructing a speech act in a theoretical sense. I do not intend here to make any claims regarding psycholinguistics or neurology in terms of the actual mechanisms by which language

is developed and constructed in the brain, but rather to speak theoretically about the decision-making process in choosing one specific form over another. While this process of form selection is clearly rarely if never a conscious one, it appears to be particularly subconscious in the case of epistemic distinctions. Grzech et al. (2020) note that the exact rules around the usage of epistemic forms in language are not reliably consciously available to speakers, as will be discussed in Appendix A with regards to the field work undertaken on Lhokpu as part of this project. Whether conscious or not, however, there is necessarily still some process by which forms are chosen as language is constructed.

There are two general conceptualisations of this process that will be used in the following analysis. The first is a sort of bottom-up approach in which a form is selected for its given meaning. That is, a speaker is attempting to communicate some meaning *xyz*, and as such selects forms with meaning *x*, *y* and *z*. This, of course, is greatly simplified, and does not account for, for instance, agreement, in which multiple forms in a given speech act carry the same meaning. The essence of the conceptualisation is, in any case, that in order to communicate a given meaning, the speaker will select forms with the necessary component meanings for successful communication. The second conceptualisation, on the other hand, views the meanings of individual forms as being comprised of a series of conditions that need to be met in order for that form to be used. In selecting a given form the speaker considers these conditions against the conditions of the speech act –being both the propositional content of the speech act and its deictic context—and subsequently selects the forms whose conditions have been met. Here, if a speaker is trying to communicate *abc*, they might, for example, consider a set or paradigm of forms with the conditions of *c*, *d*, *e*, and *f*. In choosing the form *c*, the speaker considers each form against their intended *abc* to see which best fits, and as such, also considers whatever conditions *d*, *e*, and *f* represent along with the actually applicable *c*. This is particularly abstract without a concrete example, though it forms a basis for the case studies presented in Section 7.2.2, where it is exemplified more clearly. The primary difference between these conceptualisations is in how much the speaker is explicitly seen to consider when selecting a form. That is, in the first conceptualisation, the speaker only considers the meaning they wish to communicate, whereas in the second, the speaker is also necessarily considering conditions which are not necessarily relevant to their intended meaning. This wider consideration implied in the second conceptualisation serves the purpose of selecting a given form in opposition to similar ones, such as contrasting forms in a single paradigm. Additionally, it is easier to ascribe multiple conditions to an epistemic form where only one would be considered the primary meaning. This process would still be theoretically present in any case regardless of the conceptualisation through which the selection of forms is being described. In essence, the two methods used in the following analyses of describing forms, their meanings, and the processes around how they are selected, are not intended to be seen as two different processes; rather, they are two ways of describing or conceptualising the cognitive communicative process.

## Chapter 3

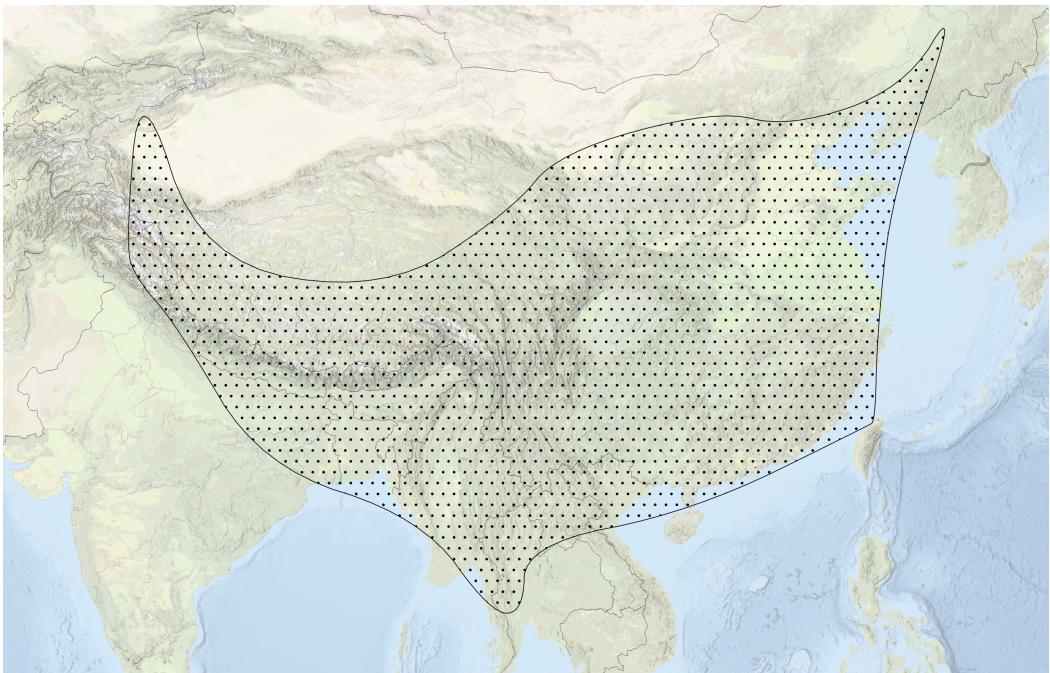
# Background of Trans-Himalayan languages

### 3.1 Introduction

The Trans-Himalayan family, also referred to as Tibeto-Burman or Sino-Tibetan<sup>1</sup>, is a primary language family spoken throughout parts of Asia, centring on the Himalayas and extending to the south-east through Myanmar and the Shan Hills, to the north through to the northern edge of the Tibetan Plateau, and to the west into the Karakoram mountains and Baltistan. Languages of this family are also spoken throughout China, both historically and as the official language of China, namely Standard Mandarin (*pǔtōnghuà*). Their overall geographic distribution is shown in Map 1, showing the family stretching as far north as Northern China (Mandarin, Sinitic), to the western reaches of the Himalayan range in Kashmir in the west (Purik and Balti, Tibetic). In the south, the Karen subfamily stretches south towards the Malay Peninsula; in the east, more recent migrations have brought Sinitic Languages to Taiwan. The family includes major languages such as Mandarin and Cantonese, both in the Sinitic branch; Burmese, in the Ngwi-Burmese branch; and Tibetan, in the Bodish or Tibetic branch. Additionally, some smaller languages have official status or institutional support such as Dzongkha and Denjongke (Tibetic) in Bhutan and Sikkim respectively. The remainder of the languages in the family are, for the most part, spoken by smaller indigenous communities throughout the region. Glottolog reports almost 500 languages in the family (Hammarström et al. 2024), while Owen-Smith & Hill (2014) report around 600, with over 1.4 billion total speakers (H. Zhang et al. 2020), approximately 900 million of which are native Mandarin speakers (Eberhard & Simons 2021). While the majority of the family's speakers exist to the North of the Himalayan range in China, this statistic is a result of the overwhelmingly large number of speakers of Sinitic languages, specifically Mandarin and its dialects. The greatest area of linguistic diversity, on the other hand, falls to the South, in the Eastern Himalaya region

---

<sup>1</sup>The term 'Tibeto-Burman' is used in the literature to refer to both the family as a whole, as well as a single branch. This is discussed in full in Section 3.3.3.



Map 1: The approximate full extent of the Trans-Himalayan languages, missing some parts of the People's Republic of China, and of Taiwan. There are areas inside this extent where Trans-Himalayan languages are not spoken, or where non-Trans-Himalayan languages are spoken (e.g. Kra-Dai, Austroasiatic, Mon-Khmer, Indo-European).

covering Eastern Nepal and far North-Eastern India, in particular in the Shan Hills (Blench & Post 2014).

This chapter comprises an overview of the history of research into the Trans-Himalayan family in Section 3.2, both in the Western tradition and otherwise, a major part of which is the growing body of grammatical description that provides a foundation for this project. It also provides an overview of some ongoing contemporary discussions and research in the field in Section 3.3, and establishes the stance taken in this project with regards to these disagreements. Within this, Section 3.3.5 compares a number of proposed phylogenies, in particular those developed through Bayesian analyses in Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020) and discusses some potential issues with the conclusions they draw. It will also consider the usefulness of these methodologies and their results both in the development of a representative sample and in linguistics in general. Lastly, this chapter discusses the work that has been undertaken in the historical domain, looking both at surviving primary sources of historical languages, as well as the current extent of reconstructions of proto-languages.

### 3.2 History of research into Trans-Himalayan languages

#### 3.2.1 Pre-European scholarship

Linguistic research is no new innovation in the Himalayas and Eastern Asia. Scholars wrote about language and its history and use well before the arrival of any Western academic tradition to the region. Literary traditions have existed in a number of regions for many centuries, and much of this literature informs contemporary linguistic research.

Old and Middle Chinese Rime Books, which group characters by their pronunciations, have been widely used as sources informing contemporary reconstructions of the languages (Baxter 1992). The books were composed as early as the second century CE, through to the ninth. Due to the (generally) non-phonetic nature of the Chinese writing system, these books were compiled to create some record or method of instruction into the pronunciation of each character, by sorting each character in terms of its onset and rime (Jī 2021).

There is a similarly longstanding tradition of linguistic research in Tibet. Perhaps the most important of these are the 蜀辭書 *Sum cu pa* and 藏文詩韻圖 *rTags kyi 'jug pa*, both attributed to 7th century scholar Thönmi Sambhoṭa, who is also credited with the development of the Tibetan writing system (Müller-Witter 2009). These treatises comprise early grammatical descriptions of the language at the time, and are, at least according to legend, the only two survivors of a corpus of eight written by Thönmi Sambhoṭa (Miller 1963). They are also accompanied by a tradition of more recent of commentaries and translations (Chashab 2008). There have been questions raised as to whether or not the attribution of these works to Thönmi Sambhoṭa is historically accurate, both for the grammatical treatises and development of the script. Arguments have been made that the treatises could have been written several hundred years later than legend reports (Miller 1963). Aside from various historical inconsistencies or points of uncertainty when dealing with primary sources, Miller (1963) notes that the *Sum cu pa* and *rTags kyi 'jug pa* alone cover both the syntax and morphology of the language respectively (Chashab 2008), leaving the question of what the other six treatises would have actually addressed. There seems to have been little reference in the Tibetan tradition as to the contents of this lost body of work, suggesting that they may never have existed.

While it is important to note this history of research and grammatical description in China and Tibet, there is little evidence of grammaticalised epistemic marking in Old Tibetan, in that the modern evidential-egophoric paradigm had not yet developed (Hill 2014) (though some distinctions have been described for Middle Classical Tibetan (Zeisler 2018b, Oisel 2024)). Similarly, it does not appear that any relevant grammatical phenomena were present in Old Chinese (which is, at least at this stage, similarly the case for the modern Sinitic languages), with the exception of

adverbs marking epistemic modality<sup>2</sup> (Pulleyblank 1995). As such, this early research provides no extra data for analysis. That said, at least in the case of Modern Tibetan, the evidential-egophoric system is an innovation or areal borrowing, rather than a system that might have been inherited from any proto-language, Tibetic or earlier. Further historical languages with surviving records but lacking contemporaneous linguistic research are presented in Section 3.4.1.

### 3.2.2 European scholarship

In contrast to this centuries-old body of research into Tibetan and Chinese grammar and phonology, the history of Western research and interest into the family is only some 200 years old. A ‘Tibeto-Burman’ language family containing Chinese, Tibetan, and Burmese, and excluding geographically close language groups such as Kradai and Austroasiatic was first proposed by Julius von Klaproth in 1823 (van Driem 2014: 12); though this was by no means a widely accepted theory until much later. Much of the other earliest research into the language family by Western scholars was built on scientifically unfounded ideas of language structure which equated the lack of inflection in group such as the Sinitic and Tai languages with a lack of mental capacity (van Driem 2014: 13). Comparative evidence of a link between Tibetan and Chinese was not found, however, until the early to mid-20th century, with the work of Robert Schafer, first published in 1939. This work still included the Tai languages in the Phylum, a clade which would not be readily dropped from the family until much later (Matisoff 1991). Handel (2008) reports another source around the same period—a 1937 survey of the languages and dialects of China by Li Fang-Kuei—that also included neighbouring families such as Tai and Miao-Yao, which is noted in the editorial of its 1973 republication to have been an influential piece of literature in the area of study through the mid-20th century (F.-K. Li 1973).

The past few decades have seen a rapid increase in the amount of research on the Trans-Himalayan family in the Western academic tradition, though research has been conducted to some extent since the early 19th century (van Driem 2014). In 1991, Matisoff (1991) suggested that the field was no older than 50 years, and had only seen substantial growth since the late 1960s. This recent growth in research can be seen in Figure 3.1, which shows the number of publications on Trans-Himalayan linguistics by year, as indexed by the Glottolog database (Hammarström et al. 2024). The drop-off in the most recent years can in part be attributed to the fact that the data for this graph were collected before a year was complete, and as such more recent publications from the first half of the year might not have been added into the Glottolog database. The rise can be seen as having started in 1950; its substantial acceleration over the past 20 years can be attributed to a number of factors. The past few decades have seen an increase in the accessibility of many of these areas, physically and legally. Many of the states in North Eastern India only opened

---

<sup>2</sup>There is a question surrounding the definition of an adverb versus a particle (that is, lexical versus grammatical) that I will not attempt to answer.



Figure 3.1: Number of publications on the Trans-Himalayan family recorded in the Glottolog database by year up to mid 2021 (Hammarström et al. 2024)

to international researchers within the past decade, allowing a substantial increase in research output focused on this region (Blench & Post 2014). A similar situation can be seen in Bhutan, where research access has historically—and indeed, to this day—been severely restricted (Hyslop, p.c. 2024). It is no coincidence then that many of the subfamilies with very limited description are in this region (e.g., Gongduk, Lhokpu in Bhutan (see Sections 3.3.4, A), Digarish, Mudzuish in North-Eastern India.) This uneven descriptive coverage and its implications for this project are further discussed in Sections 3.3.2 and 3.3.4.

### 3.2.3 Dialects or languages?

The question of the distinction between a language and a dialect is all-pervasive to linguistics. Different interpretations of this distinction in different research traditions and political systems in the region have created an imbalance in the definition of languages and dialects in the family. LaPolla (2016) suggests that languages predominantly researched by linguists in the Chinese academic sphere, especially in the Sinitic branch, tend to more commonly be considered dialects of single broader languages, while languages researched by other linguistics, namely in the Indian academic sphere, tend to be considered separate languages in a more closely related subfamily. Anecdotally, I was once told by a Bhutanese person that they believed Bhutan to have 90 different languages, a figure which would require an incredibly fine-grained approach to the definition of languages as opposed to dialects to be true (van Driem (1994) and Hyslop (2016) suggest a number closer to 20).

This is also reflected at a policy level, namely in how governments identify and classify various ethnolinguistic groups. Bradley & Bradley (2002) give an extreme example from the Eastern Indo-

Chinese border, where India officially identifies over 50 different “scheduled tribes” or ethnic groups, which are all grouped into a single Luoba “nationality” across the border by China.

While these two tendencies do not necessarily produce differing results in terms of isolated descriptions (descriptions of separate “dialects” of languages spoken in China have been conducted similar to descriptions of separate “languages” spoken elsewhere (Lai 2017, Taylor-Adams & Lhawa 2020)), it can cause skew at a typological level, as there is a possibility that similarly divergent groups of “languages” or “dialects” will be identified as its own subfamily if spoken in India, but not in China. This has been raised as a potential criticism of van Driem (2014) (LaPolla 2016), and presents a potential issue in sampling for this project. That is, will a region of high linguistic diversity be missed or underrepresented because it has been classified in such a way that (deliberately or otherwise) reduces official recognition of this diversity?

### 3.3 Current state of research

#### 3.3.1 State of description

The level of coverage in the description of languages across the Trans-Himalayan subfamilies varies greatly, ranging from subfamilies with over a hundred published grammars, to a number with no published comprehensive grammars, or even no published description at all. In order to compare the state of description across the family and illustrate the disparities, data on language numbers (also presented in Table 4.1), as well as published literature on each language has been collected from Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024). Specifically, the number of unique<sup>3</sup> publications categorised in Glottolog’s database as “Grammar” has been counted for each subfamily, as well as the languages of these publications. These figures are estimations, given that the boundary between the distinction in the database between “Grammar” and “Grammar Sketch” is not a clear line,<sup>4</sup> and that the figures rely on Glottolog’s very broad but not necessarily perfect coverage of the literature. Similarly, the figures used for the numbers of languages are, of course, also estimations using Glottolog’s categorisation. Finally, the database covers publications on grammars dating back at times to the 19th century, which may not be considered up to contemporary standards in terms of linguistic analysis. As such, these figures can certainly be illustrative in

---

<sup>3</sup>This excluded both exact repetitions in the database where two sources have had the same publication under slightly different names (e.g., with or without middle names or initials), and cases where a two grammars of the same language by the same author are listed, usually because of a thesis which has subsequently been turned into a book. This latter case has been excluded as, while there are likely differences between the two publications, they do not represent the greater level of coverage in the literature that would be seen from a second grammar being written out of an entirely separate project.

<sup>4</sup>Glottolog does define the categories as “150 pages and beyond” and “50 pages” (Hammarström et al. 2024: Glossary), though this is not always reflected in practice.

a broad sense, showing the differences in documentation levels in general terms, but cannot be seen as precise figures for any further detailed statistical analysis.

The highest coverage was recorded for Meithei, an internal isolate. Glottolog recorded eight unique grammars for the one language, with the earliest being a description by Arthur John Primrose published in 1888. This is by some measure the highest number, with the next highest ratio of languages to grammars seen for the Sinitic subfamily, which has 4.46 grammars for each language.<sup>5</sup> Figure 3.2 shows the ratio of overall grammars per language in each subfamily. Four subfamilies show a ratio of one, meaning there is an equal number of published grammars on the subfamily and languages in the subfamily on Glottolog. This does not mean, however, that every language in the subfamily has been described, as levels of description can vary widely within a given subfamily. While an internal isolate, Meithei serves as a potent example of why this is possible, where multiple grammars have been written on the one language. Similarly, there are cases where the authors of grammars might consider two varieties different languages, or at least sufficiently different for a separate grammar, but the varieties are grouped as one language on Glottolog. For example, of the two English-language grammars on Tshangla (another internal isolate), Grollmann (2020) discusses specifically the Bjokapakha variety, while Andvik (2010) covers Tshangla more generally, as external factors prevented him from working with any single given speech community or village. In other cases—for instance Gates (2021) and Honkasalo (2019) writing about Eastern Geshiza and Mazur Stau—it is not necessarily clear whether or not the two rGyalrongic varieties described ought to be considered different languages or not, but are in any case considered grammars of the same language in this analysis and in the source of the data (Hammarström et al. 2024). In this example, Honkasalo (2019: 1) refers to the specific subgroup within rGyalrongic as the “Horpa languages,” while Gates (2021: 12) uses the same, as well as the more agnostic term “Horpa lects”.

A comparison of the metalanguages of the literature in this dataset can also reveal some trends; more specifically, it reveals gaps in the data available to this project, given it was limited to literature written in English with some exceptions in texts written in French or German, e.g. Lai (2017). This data is presented in Figure 3.3, showing the metalanguages used as a percentage of the total grammars in the dataset. Unsurprisingly, the families with higher levels of literature in Chinese—namely Bai, Digarish, Ersuish, Kho-Bwa, Mizduish, Ngwi-Burmese, Nungish, Qiangic, rGyalrongic, Sinitic, and Tuja—*are all at least in part spoken in China*. The Digarish, Kho-Bwa, Midzuish, and Nungish branches are all spoken partly outside of China (or in contested areas), specifically in all three cases around the tri-point between China, Myanmar, and the Indian state of Arunachal Pradesh. In these cases as well, the Chinese literature comprises one or two of a total of three or four publications. The higher level of use of French as a metalanguage in the rGyalronic subfamily (4 out of 15) can be attributed directly to the research and teaching of Guil-

---

<sup>5</sup>116 grammars across 26 languages.

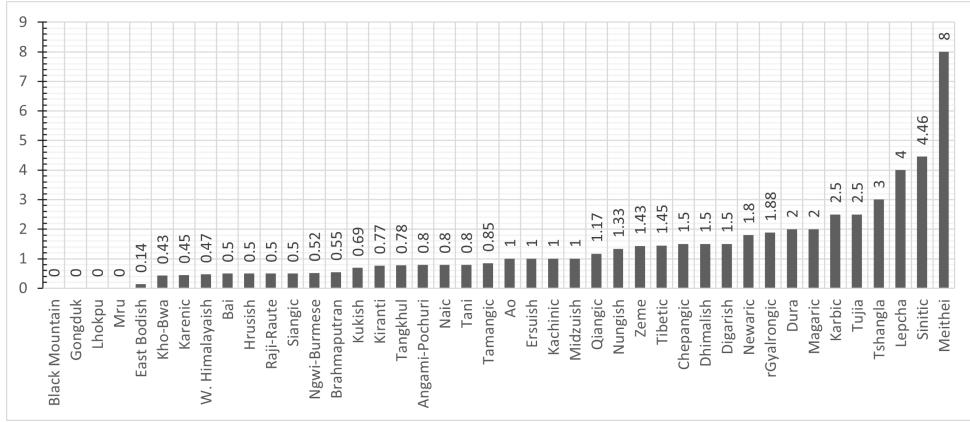


Figure 3.2: The ratio of overall grammars per language for each of the subfamilies, sorted from lowest to highest.

laume Jacques, as three of the items are doctoral theses over which he was supervisor, and the final is his own grammar of Japhug (Jacques 2021).

Thus far, the literature referenced in this analysis has broadly been referred to as “published” or as a survey of “publications”; however it is worth noting that this also includes both Master’s and doctoral theses, which have not technically been published or peer-reviewed in the same manner as a book. While this is not to say that a Master’s or doctoral thesis is inherently less reliable than a published book, Master’s theses in particular are necessarily shorter and less detailed. It was not feasible to annotate all of the grammars in the dataset for their initial origin in these terms, but assuming a higher number of Master’s and doctoral students undertaking descriptive projects than degree-holding academics undertaking such projects to the point of a published grammar, it can be assumed that theses comprise a substantial if not majority portion of the dataset.<sup>6</sup> To compare only the data collected for the larger analysis in this project, discussed in Section 4.2, about 40% are Master’s or doctoral theses, and theses were generally only used where no formally published book was available.

### 3.3.2 Situating the Sinitic branch in the family

Current opinion on the structure of the family in the literature is strongly divided into two main schools of thought, predominantly centred on the highest-level division in the family genealogically. One school of thought suggests that the family is divided into two primary branches: ‘Sinitic’ and ‘Tibeto-Burman’. Alternatively, some scholars argue that this binary division is incorrect, and that the Sinitic subfamily exists at a lower level within the overall family. These two mutually exclusive hypotheses will be henceforth referred to as the Sinitic-Divergent and Other-Divergent hypotheses.

<sup>6</sup>While this rings true in the current, I suspect that this has not always been the case. Additionally, the rise of theses being readily available online has made them more accessible, and potentially more common in the Glottolog database.

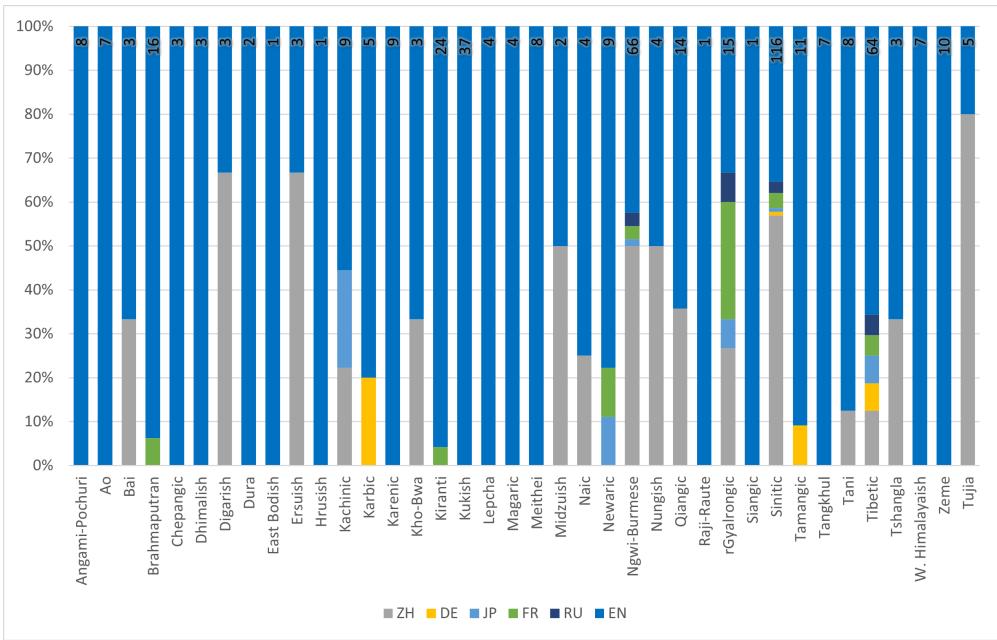


Figure 3.3: Distribution of metalanguages as a percentage of the total grammars in each subfamily. The number at the top of each subfamily is the total number of grammars in the dataset per subfamily.

A number of recent studies have found evidence in favour of the Sinitic-Divergent hypothesis through computational methodologies (M. Zhang et al. 2019, H. Zhang et al. 2020, Sagart et al. 2019), namely Bayesian analyses and methodologies from fields of genetics, using cognate sets as an equivalent to genetic markers. While these three papers agree on their support for the Sinitic-Divergent hypothesis to various extents, they otherwise disagree on the internal structure of the Tibeto-Burman branch and the time-scale of the family as a whole. Sagart et al. (2019) report an origin around 7,400 years BP, with a millet-farming urheimat, in North-Eastern China. M. Zhang et al. (2019) on the other hand reports a slightly younger mean age (about 5,800BP) and an urheimat much further south-west, in the eastern reaches of the Tibetan Plateau. Finally, H. Zhang et al. (2020) suggest an even earlier origin, at 8,000 years BP, and while not providing a clear urheimat, they do suggest that the Sinitic/Tibero-Burman division occurred prior to the development of widespread agriculture in China.

A number of potential issues in these methodologies have been identified by various researchers. H. Zhang et al. (2020) themselves highlight some methodological concerns in M. Zhang et al. (2019) and Sagart et al. (2019), namely surrounding the representativeness of their datasets. They suggest that their dataset presents a more evenly distributed cross-section of the language family by subfamily, with a lower standard deviation in percentage of languages in each subfamily sampled (H. Zhang et al. 2020). They also note that Sagart et al. (2019) contains no data at all

from the Karenic or Naga subfamilies, with Karenic languages being spoken geographically much further south than other languages in the family.

This criticism, however, can extend to any study aiming to computationally analyse high level structures of any language family. That is, if a dataset is missing particularly linguistically or geographically divergent data, it is difficult to consider it an accurate representation of the data. Similarly, if data from only one language from a given sub-family is included, but many languages from another, that dataset may be similarly skewed. H. Zhang et al. (2020) notes this as an issue in M. Zhang et al. (2019) and Sagart et al. (2019), and report a more even coverage of each subfamily than in the two previous studies. However, this relies on the subfamilies presented in the paper being representative of the actual subfamilies within the as-yet-unconfirmed Trans-Himalayan stammbaum. There is a degree of a circular logic here. In order to create an even sample of the language family by subfamily, one needs first to know what these subfamilies actually are, which is in many ways exactly what these studies are trying to discover.

H. Zhang et al. (2020) also only report subfamily coverage for a small set of subfamilies, grouping a large number of other languages into the category “isolates” and as such ignoring any subfamily relations they may have. In some cases, such as with Tujia or Meithei, this agrees with other literature such as van Driem (2014), though in other cases it seems to fail to consider the language’s other close relations. For instance, Kinnauri is listed as an isolate in the list of languages, despite being classified in a separate West Himalayish subfamily by both van Driem (2014) and Thurgood (2017), a subfamily with, in addition to Kinnauri, at least 14 other languages (Hammarström et al. 2024). A similar issue exists with the Kachinic languages, which are represented solely by the so-called ‘isolate’ Jingpo (at the exclusion of 8 other languages), as well as with the rGyalrongic languages, which are represented by Jiarung, Daofu Horpa, and Ergong, all of which are given as isolates despite being grouped together in wider literature (Honkasalo 2019, Gates 2021).<sup>7</sup>

### 3.3.3 Name of the family

This uncertainty surrounding the high level internal structure of the language family also has implications for the name of family itself, in that the historically most widespread name ‘Sino-Tibetan’ specifically references the Sinitic-Divergent hypothesis. A number of alternatives to this have been suggested, either to actively reject the Sinitic-Divergent hypothesis or to remain agnostic. ‘Tibeto-Burman’ has been used fairly widely as an alternative name for the family as a whole, in contrast to Tibeto-Burman as the non-Sinitic branch of a Sinitic-Divergent Sino-Tibetan family (van Driem 2007b). While this no longer supports a Sinitic-Divergent structure for the family, it

---

<sup>7</sup>A pervasive challenge in research on the Trans-Himalayan family is the lack of agreement on language names. ‘Jiarung’ most likely refers to the rGyalrongic languages here, though the core group of the subfamily is varyingly referred to as a group of languages or dialects of a single language. See Section 3.2.3 for further discussion.

also seems to suggest some level of primacy or greater importance to Tibetan and Burmese languages, one of the very issues initially identified with the term Sino-Tibetan. A second alternative, ‘Trans-Himalayan’, has been proposed more recently, avoiding reference to any specific language to avoid any such suggestions of internal structure or greater importance in certain languages or subfamilies (Blench & Post 2014). Here, ‘Trans-Himalayan’ refers to the geographic distribution of languages in the family across entire Himalayan range, and well to the North and South. A potential point of confusion with this name is the inconsistency in meaning between this term and the use of ‘trans’ in wider toponomy. For example, ‘Transalpine’ traditionally refers not to the area across *both* sides of the Alps, but on the *other* side (from Rome), and is contrasted with ‘Cisalpine’ (on *this* side of the Alps).

The term Trans-Himalayan is used in this thesis in order to avoid giving any undue authority to any particular language or political entity, and to avoid the inevitable confusion between ‘Tibeto-Burman’ as the whole family and ‘Tibeto-Burman’ as the non-Sinitic branch of ‘Sino-Tibetan’.

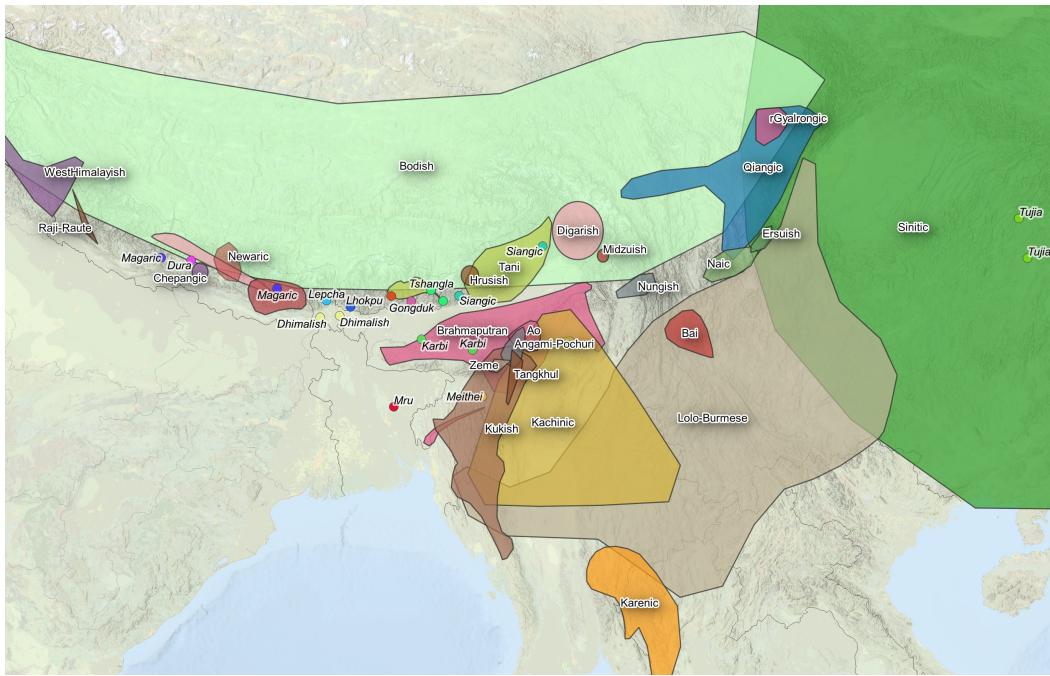
### 3.3.4 Overview of subfamilies

Van Driem (2014) presents a large set of subfamilies that are widely agreed on to exist, while avoiding any claims about other internal structures. These subfamilies are illustrated in Figure 2. Subfamily names have been taken directly from van Driem (2014), with the exception of Lolo-Burmese, for which the term Ngwi-Burmese will be used in line with publications such as Donlay (2019) and González-Pérez (2022), following Bradley (2005).

While van Driem (2014) is able to represent well-established subfamilies, uncertainties in the literature arise still in areas with limited description. While there is often a general consensus of which languages are a member of the family and which are isolates or members of other families such as Tai, Austroasiatic, or Indo-European, Blench & Post (2014) suggest that the lack of research in some areas mean that languages assumed to be Trans-Himalayan simply cannot actually be proven as such (e.g., Hruso, Hrusish: India). They similarly report that some languages in the region are so divergent, it is unclear if they are Trans-Himalayan or languages from a pre-existing family that have undergone heavy Trans-Himalayan influence (e.g., the Siangic subfamily (Post & Blench 2011)).

The subfamilies proposed by van Driem (2014) can be split into two groups: true subfamilies, and internal isolates. These encompass, respectively, groupings with containing multiple languages as opposed to those containing only one. The ten Trans-Himalayan isolates are as follows:

- Black Mountain Mönpa, aka ‘Olekha, a moribund language spoken in Central Bhutan (van Driem 1995, Hyslop 2016)



Map 2: Approximate geographic distribution of van Driem's (2014) subfamilies. Subfamilies with only one language, or two languages that are not geographically contiguous are represented as single points.

- Dura, a likely extinct language historically spoken by the Dura people in Lamjung district, Nepal (Schorer 2016)
- Gongduk, a largely undescribed language spoken in South-Eastern Bhutan spoken by approximately 1000 people in Gongdü Gewog (Bodt 2012).
- Lepcha, spoken by 30,000-50,000 speakers in the Indian state of Sikkim and the surrounding regions in Bhutan, Nepal, and the Indian state of West Bengal (Plaisier 2007).
- Lhokpu, a largely undescribed language spoken by the Lhop or Doya people in South-Western Bhutan, potentially more closely related to the Dhimalish subfamily (Bodt 2012, Grollmann & Gerber 2018), discussed in greater detail in Appendix A.
- Meithei, aka Manipuri, the primary language of the North-East Indian state of Manipur, where it is spoken by well over 1 million people (S. L. Chelliah 1997).
- Pyu, an extinct language, historically spoken in modern-day Myanmar prior to the spread of Burmese speakers in the 11th century (Miyake 2019).
- Mru, an underdescribed language spoken in the Chittagong Hill Tracts in Bangladesh (van Driem 2014). It has also been suggested that Mru is closely related to the Anu-Hkongso language spoken on the Bangladesh/Myanmar border (Peterson 2017).

- Tshangla, aka Sharchops, spoken by approximately 150,000 people in eastern Bhutan, where it is used as a lingua franca throughout the region. It is also spoken by populations in Arunachal Pradesh, India and in Tibet, where it is called Dirang Monpa and Mòtuō Monpa respectively (Andvik 2010, Grollmann & Gerber 2018).
- Tujia, spoken by approximately 60,000 of the over 8 million members of the Tujia ethnic group in north-western Hunan Province, PRC (Brassett et al. 2006). In Map 2 it is divided into Northern and Southern Tujia, the latter of which is estimated to have fewer than 2,000 speakers.

The remaining 32 subgroups contain more languages, ranging from two (e.g., Raji-Raute, Siangic, Midzuish) to upwards of 100 (Ngwi-Burmese), and can be seen in Figure 2.

The coverage of literature on the other subfamilies varies substantially between cases. The Tibetic subfamily, for instance, as discussed in Section 3.2, has a long history of grammatical research, as well as a larger population, resulting in greater attention from researchers. As such, there is a significant body of work on Tibetic languages, ranging from full grammars (such as Zemp (2018), Graves (2007), and Denwood (1999)), to extensive discussions about the meanings of single words (see Aikhenvald (2012), DeLancey (2012), Hill (2012), and Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012) for one very prominent example).

The Qiangic languages are another subfamily with a comparatively sizable coverage in terms of literature, and most importantly to this project, data availability, with a number of grammars available (LaPolla & Huang 2003, Ding 2014), and further research underway.<sup>8</sup> According to Glottolog, descriptions are available for at least half of the languages in the subfamily (Hammarström et al. 2024). While many of subfamilies ostensibly have similar levels of coverage, with Glottolog listing between a third to a half as many full grammars as there languages in the subfamily, a number of the smaller non-isolate subfamilies have received little to no attention from descriptive linguists at all. In other subfamilies, specifically those primarily spoken in China or its border regions, descriptions are often more plentiful, but only in Chinese. These include the Ngwi, Midzuish, and of course Sinitic subfamilies, among others, for which only the English (or French in some cases (Lai 2017)) literature can be considered in this project. A more in-depth literature review of the state of description in the family can be found in Section 3.3.1.

### 3.3.5 Comparison of proposed phylogenies

A substantial contribution to the study of Trans-Himalayan languages, and in particular the historical development of the family in genealogical terms, has been a set of studies using computer statistical modelling, namely Bayesian statistics, borrowed from biology to infer the most likely

---

<sup>8</sup>Agnes Conrad is working on a descriptive project of Eastern Minyag, a language traditionally classified as Qiangic (p.c. 2024).

phylogeny for the family. These studies—Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020)—draw varied conclusions about the internal structure of the family and the timeline of its development, though all draw the conclusion that the Sinitic subfamily is most likely either the sole outgroup, or, per H. Zhang et al. (2020), one of two.

Given their disagreement, and the discussion thus far about their methodology, this section will compare the phylogenies provided in Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020), as well as comparing all three to the Fallen Leaves model (van Driem 2014). Some other proposed phylogenies, such as that put forward in Matisoff (2015), are not included here as they remain largely agnostic about the family’s structure outside of a few primary divisions. In Figures 3.4–3.6, the trees given in their respective sources are reproduced to the subfamily level. That is, the branches are reproduced exactly, but rather than terminating in individual languages (as in Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020)), or in other subfamilies, the branches terminate in the equivalent subfamily from the set used in this project given in Table 4.1. While the branching structure of the subfamilies is accurately reproduced here, the time depth of the various divergences given in the Bayesian analyses is not.

Not every subfamily is represented in every tree, a point which forms part of the criticism of the Bayesian analyses. This occurs for these analyses when a given sample does not include any data from a given subfamily, and therefore does not represent or account for it in the final result. Missing subfamilies for each of Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020) are given in Table 3.1.

As discussed above, for each of the terminal nodes given in Figures 3.4–3.6 (that is, van Driem’s fallen leaves), one to three languages have been sampled. While initially the intention of presenting Figures 3.4–3.6 was to compare the representativeness of this project’s sample against their proposals for a phylogeny of the Trans-Himalayan family, it is clear from Table 3.1 that, in all cases, the coverage of this project is substantially larger, especially in terms of smaller language families or internal isolates. As van Driem (2014) categorised the entire family into generally very fine-grained subfamilies, there are no languages in any of the three studies that cannot be categorised into one of the subfamilies used in this project, implying a lack of gaps in this project’s sample. As such, to identify possible gaps in this survey’s sample, it is necessary to identify locations where Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020) disagree with van Driem (2014). A number of small disagreements are noted for M. Zhang et al. (2019) and H. Zhang et al. (2020).

Another significant area of consideration is instances wherein van Driem’s (2014) larger subgroups are presented as multiple smaller subfamilies in the other data. Namely, M. Zhang et al. (2019) divides the Ngwi-Burmese family into three classifications, diverging approximately 2,000 years ago. Taking these three branches (Loloish, Nusu, Burmish) as separate subfamilies for the sake of representativeness, the sample for this project thus contains two Loloish (here: Ngwi)

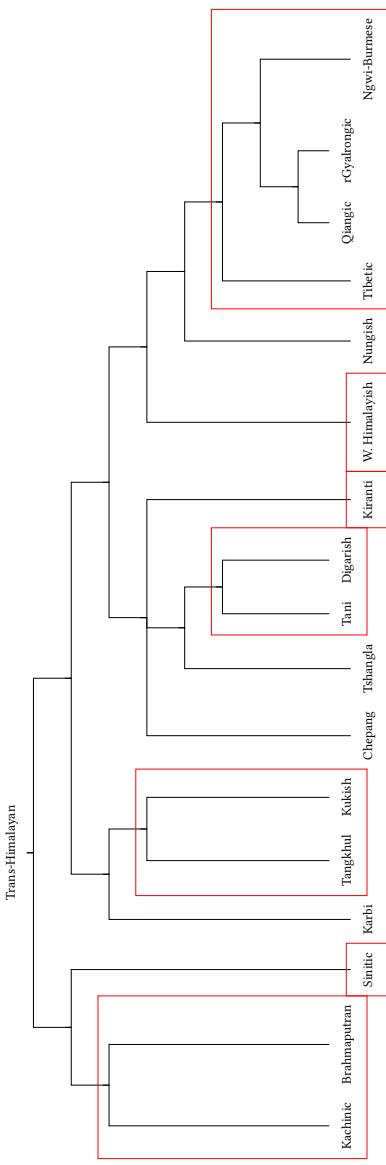


Figure 3.4: The Trans-Himalayan family as per Sagart et al. (2019), showing the positions of the subfamilies used in this project. Branches with over 80% posterior probability (that is, branches with high confidence) have been marked with a red box. Time depth has not been reproduced in this tree.

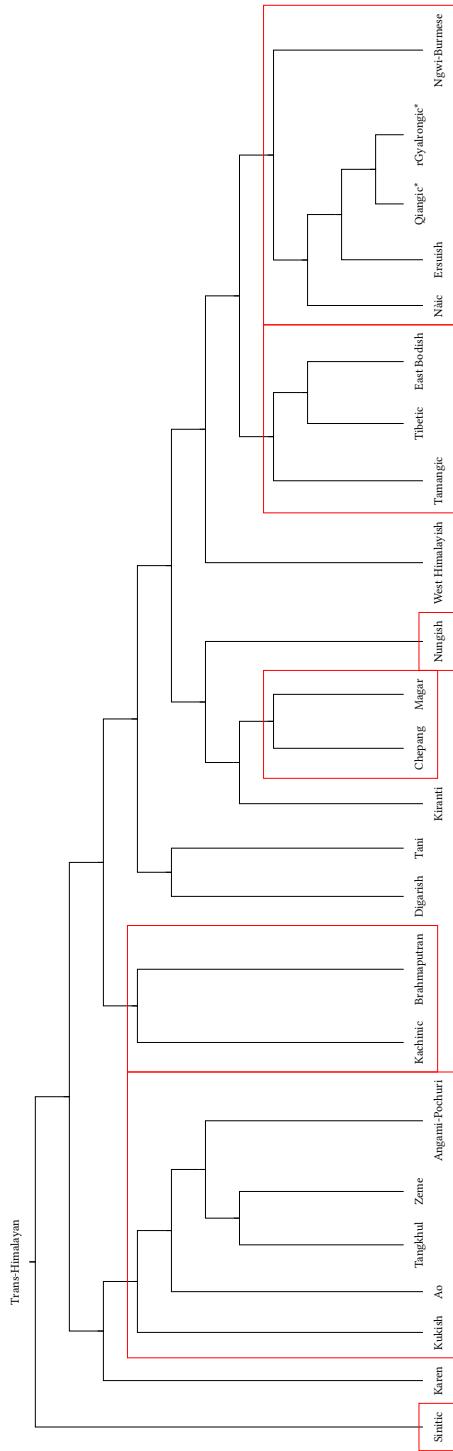


Figure 3.5: The Trans-Himalayan family as per M. Zhang et al. (2019). \*The phylogeny here does not in fact support these two subfamilies, but rather gives two rGyalrongic languages – rGyalrong Maerkang (glottolog: Situ) and Caodeng (glottolog: Tshobdun) – as an outgroup to the Qiangic clade, and two others – Daofu and Ergong Danba (glottolog: both under Stau-dGebshes) are given as members of one of two Qiangic branches. Branches with over 80% posterior probability have been marked with a red box. Time depth has not been reproduced in this tree.

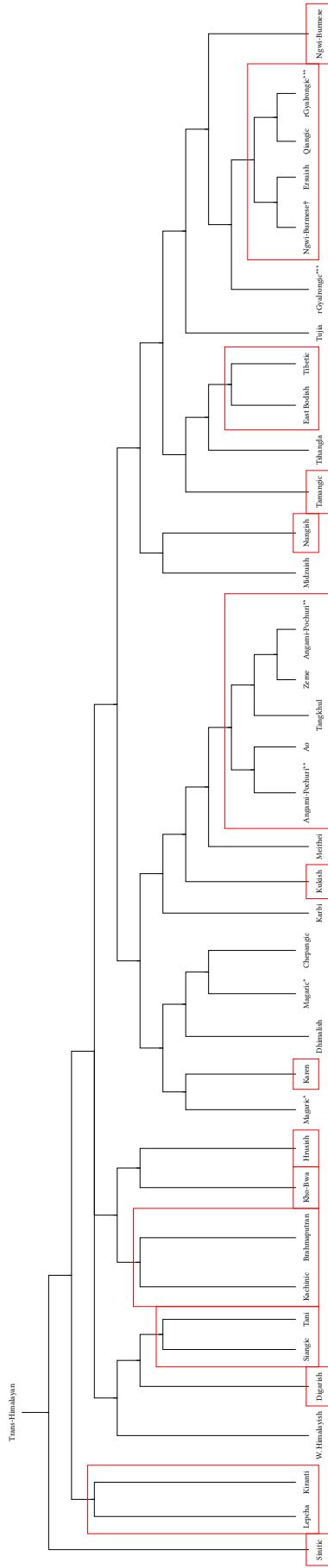


Figure 3.6: The Trans-Himalayan family as per H. Zhang et al. (2020). In this analysis, a number of van Driem's (2014) subfamilies are divided, with either single or multiple languages separated from the rest of their subfamily. These have been marked (\*, \*\*, \*\*\*, †) and are discussed in the text. Branches with over 80% posterior probability have been marked with a red box. Time depth has not been reproduced in this tree.

languages, one Burmish language, and no Nusu languages. As is discussed above, the Ngwi-Burmese subfamily is the largest by some margin, which gives some credence to a division into multiple smaller subfamilies. However, when considering the estimated age of the subfamily per the Bayesian analyses, the combined Ngwi-Burmese branch is a similar age to many of van Driem's (2014) other subfamilies represented in M. Zhang et al. (2019)—which range from 750 years old for Tani to 3,000 years old for Kiranti—as well as in H. Zhang et al. (2020), in which the subfamilies vary in age from 500 years old (Ersuish) to 4,500 years old (West Himalayish). This is to say that although there are a great number of contemporary Ngwi-Burmese languages attested, the branch itself does not appear to be any older than many of the smaller branches used in this survey, and as such there is less of a reason to treat it as too large or too high-level.

The unrepresented subfamilies shown in Table 3.1 are, to an extent, a good indicator for how representative the given samples are. Of course, some of the missing data is unavoidable, and is repeated in this project, namely for Raji-Raute, Gongduk, Black Mountain, and Pyu. H. Zhang et al. (2020) specifically report that Bai (marked with an asterisk in Table 3.1) was excluded due to its high level of borrowing from Sinitic languages, which causes problems when comparing cognates. For H. Zhang et al. (2020), this leaves only a few smaller subfamilies unrepresented, and for M. Zhang et al. (2019) a few more, though most are still fairly small or underdocumented. Sagart et al. (2019), however, has a few more glaring omissions, in addition to the smaller or inaccessible subfamilies excluded by the others. Namely, no data from any Karenic, Kukish languages were included, nor from the smaller and (at least according to M. Zhang et al. (2019) and H. Zhang et al. (2020)) closely related Angami-Pochuri and Ao subfamilies. As has been already pointed out in Hyslop & d'Alpoim-Guedes (2020) and even in H. Zhang et al. (2020), these omissions are problematic in a quantitative analysis in which a representative sample is indispensable, especially given the much wider coverage of H. Zhang et al. (2020) compared to the two earlier studies. Even in cases where data are simply not available, the large gaps in documentary research across the Trans-Himalayan family may mean that, at this stage, the sort of quantitative statistical research undertaken in these projects is simply not yet viable, at least until a truly representative sample can be developed. Such a sample would not necessarily include data from all of the currently underdescribed languages, but it would at least be informed by a better understanding of relationships between families. For instance, if further evidence proves further that Lhokpu can be grouped into a Dimalish subfamily with Dhimal and Toto, then it need not be included separately if that family is already sufficiently represented. Similarly, further research on the other underdescribed languages of Bhutan, Gongduk and Black Mountain Mönpa, may well allow them to quite clearly be aligned with existing subgroups, but may also distance them further from any clear classification, further necessitating their inclusion in a representative sample of the family.

There is the potential here for a certain circular logic in developing a sample to be used for research into phylogenies, in that the development of a representative sample must be informed

TABLE 3.1: *Subfamilies not represented in the initial data or results of Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020). Internal isolates are given in italics.* \* *Bai was specifically excluded in this study as the extensive borrowing from Sinitic languages would cause problems for the analysis.*

Sagart et al. (2019)	M. Zhang et al. (2019)	H. Zhang et al. (2020)
Angami-Pochuri	Bai	Bai*
Ao	Black Mountain	Black Mountain
Bai	Dimalish	Dura
Black Mountain	Dura	Gongduk
Dimalish	Gongduk	Lhokpu
Dura	Hrusish	Mru
East Bodish	Karbi	Naic
Ersuish	Kho-Bwa	Newaric
Gongduk	Lepcha	Pyu
Hrusish	Lhokpu	Raji-Raute
Karenic	Meithei	
Kho-Bwa	Midzuish	
Kukish	Mru	
Lepcha	Newaric	
Lhokpu	Pyu	
Magaric	Raji-Raute	
Meithei	Siangic	
Midzuish	Tshangla	
Mru	Tujia	
Naic		
Newaric		
Pyu		
Raji-Raute		
Siangic		
Tamangic		
Tujia		
Zeme		

by a general understanding of the phylogeny of the family in order to sufficiently and more or less equally survey all areas of the family. This understanding, however, is exactly the outcome the research itself is attempting to attain. This is further confounded by the uncertainty these studies have regarding any reconstructions to deeper time depths, as is discussed below.

Only briefly discussed in H. Zhang et al. (2020) is the statistical confidence surrounding the various bifurcations given in the study's proposed phylogeny. While the study does not suggest that the given tree is clearly correct, it does suggest that the results of the analysis could be used to inform further studies into the history of the people of the Himalayas (H. Zhang et al. 2020: 5). The posterior probability of a given divergence is the calculated likelihood of the given branch being valid given the input data and starting parameters ranging from 0 (no confidence) to 1 (complete confidence) (Alfaro & Holder 2006). It can be seen as the probability that everything under a given branch belongs under that branch at the exclusion of others. For instance, the root of the tree will always have a posterior probability of 1, as the entire tree falls under it and there are no alternatives. While in biology, strongly supported clades need a posterior probability of 0.95, no such consensus has been reached in linguistics, with given thresholds for valid trees ranging from 0.7, 0.9, or with no threshold at all (Dolin 2022). The middle level divergences in H. Zhang et al. (2020) fall well below these thresholds, with the lowest falling as far as 0.04 (or 4% confidence) in certain places. In one case, a proposed bifurcation is estimated to have occurred earlier than that of its proposed parent, which is not possible. The result of this is that for most divergences proposed to have occurred earlier than 4,000 years before present, there is little to no confidence from the analysis that the final output is correct. H. Zhang et al. (2020) do note that they have over a posterior probability of over 0.95 for a number of clades at various levels. Although there are a number of clades and subfamilies it does confidently claim, for the most part it cannot actually make any confident claims about the relationships of these lower level clades to each other.<sup>9</sup> An exception to this is for the Sinitic languages, which were placed as an outgroup with a posterior probability of 0.8. Clades with posterior probabilities of over 0.8 (80% confidence) have been highlighted on the figures above in red boxes, and can be seen as the clades about which the analysis is able to make a claim over. That is, in Figure 3.6 for example, there is sufficiently strong evidence to support the Kukish subfamily, as well as a clade of the Angami-Pochuri, Ao, Tangkhul, and Zeme subfamilies, but the branches connecting them do not have sufficiently strong evidence to view them as a valid claim.

---

<sup>9</sup>I discuss this in depth here as, while these figures are clearly presented in Sagart et al. (2019) and H. Zhang et al. (2020) and in the supplementary materials for M. Zhang et al. (2019), I do not believe the actual meaning of these figures would be particularly accessible to a linguist who did not otherwise specialise in this area. The results are provided faithfully and the well-supported clades are listed by H. Zhang et al. (2020: 3), but the extent to which many of the other clades are *not* supported, and as such the extent to which the analyses do not particularly draw conclusions beyond what is possible with traditional methods, is not, I believe, made clear enough that a linguist working on Trans-Himalayan languages would, on first read, understand the conclusions actually being drawn.

M. Zhang et al. (2019) overall do not reach the same low posterior probabilities as in H. Zhang et al. (2020), though they do still only report higher probabilities at smaller subfamily levels, with probabilities below 0.5 (50%) for many of the high level divergences. This suggests that, while more confident than the other analysis, it is still unable to make any solid claims regarding the relationships of well-established clades to one another. Sagart et al. (2019) explicitly use a cutoff of 0.8 for their confident clades, and face a similarly uncertain high-level phylogeny. They do, however, report high confidence for a large clade including Tibetic, Qiangic, rGyalrongic, and Ngwi-Burmese languages they label “Tibeto-Dulong” (p. 10318) to a time depth of approximately 5,000 years before present. H. Zhang et al. (2020) report a posterior probability of 0.33 for this grouping.

With this noted, van Driem’s (2014) uncertainty surrounding relationships between established subfamilies remains to an extent in these studies. Some relationships with a shallower time depth are reported (though inconsistently between analyses) to a larger scale than in the model used for this project, but at the highest level the relationships between different branches of the family remain unclear for both the more traditional comparative method and the more recent Bayesian analysis. This further supports the decision here to approach the development of a representative sample from a phylogenetically agnostic foundation.

## 3.4 Historical linguistics

### 3.4.1 Ancient literary languages

The disagreement in the field surrounding the overall phylogeny of the family was discussed in Section 3.3.2, but this only addressed research on the family at a higher level, and using the computational models. The question remains of what research has been conducted at a lower level, and what reconstructions have been thus far possible.

While not common throughout the Trans-Himalayan-speaking sphere, there are a number of sources of early written language that have been used in historical linguistics in the region. As discussed in Section 3.2, primary historical sources are available in both Old and Middle Chinese and Old and Classical Tibetan. In addition to these, bodies of writing exist in the Pyu language of modern day Myanmar, as well as Old Burmese, and the Tangut language of north-western China.

The Pyu language was likely spoken throughout the First Millennium by the pre-Bamar population of modern-day Myanmar. The language survives in early Buddhist inscriptions, and has only recently been decoded in earnest by linguists (Griffiths et al. 2017, Miyake 2019). Pyu seems to have largely been replaced by Old Burmese from the 11th century CE following the migration of the Bamar people into the Irrawaddy Valley and advent of the Bagan Kingdom (Wheatley 2017, Griffiths et al. 2017). Old Burmese is the direct parent of Modern Burmese, and also largely survives in Buddhist inscriptions.

Tangut was spoken in the North-Western Chinese empire of Xixia in the early second millennium (Gong 2017). It may be an early member of the Qiangic subfamily, though not an ancestor of any modern Qiangic languages (Matisoff 2004). However, more recent research suggests instead that the language may be closer to the Western rGyalrongic group (Lai et al. 2020), with some shared forms discussed in Section 7.2.2.2. The language was lost until the early 20th century, when a body of literature was discovered in the ruins of the Tangut city of Khara Khoto (Gong 2017). Descriptive and analytical work is ongoing.

The Nam language is another language of the region known only through historical writings, but it has not yet been deciphered (Ikeda 2012).

Aside from these few surviving records, and for the most part their descendants (that is, Modern Burmese, the Tibetic languages, Sinitic Languages, as well as the Yi languages in Southern China), there are little to no historical written traditions throughout the Trans-Himalayan-speaking world, a characteristic which is shared with much of upland south-east Asia. A number of other languages do have native writing systems, some of which can be dated to a remarkable time depth. The oldest record of the Meihei writing system is a copper plate dating to the 8th century CE, though most of the surviving records are much younger, from the 16th-17th centuries (S. Chelliah 2000). Other languages with native writing systems with long histories of use, and subsequently a native literary tradition and historical linguistic record, include Lepcha and Limbu. Both writing systems appear to have been developed by Buddhists around the early 18th century (Plaisier 2007), though little historically oriented work has been published to the best of my knowledge. On the other hand, some native scripts are much more recent inventions. The Pollard and Fraser scripts, both used to write Lisu (Ngwi-Burmese) and some surrounding languages, were developed by missionaries for the purposes of Bible translation in the early 20th century (Bradley 2017). Community developed scripts for Wancho (Brahmaputran), Tangsa (Brahmaputran), Toto (Dhimalish), and Kayah Li (Karenic), developed across the last 50 years, have also been added to Unicode. However, given their recent development, these do not add anything to the historical study of Trans-Himalayan languages.

One potential factor in the general lack of written language compared to surrounding areas is investigated by Scott (2009) in his anthropological survey of the similarities and shared histories of groups in the south-east Asian Massif, referred to as *Zomia*. In this analysis, he identifies the active rejection of and departure from state control as a uniting factor throughout the region, and addresses the cultural similarities that could stem from this common history.

Despite focussing primarily on the south-east Asian uplands, Scott's (2009) analysis of Zomia as a cultural region united by a rejection of the powerful states in the region and a subsequent retreat into highland areas, can be used as a frame to view the Trans-Himalayan-speaking groups throughout much of the Himalayas. Namely, Scott reports a tradition of oral history and a rejection of written literary tradition throughout Zomia, a situation largely mirrored throughout the

Himalayas, where few languages and subfamilies have any traditional written tradition. The reasons for this avoidance of written language in Zomia seem to also hold in the Himalayas, in that written language can be considered representative of state control (see Scott (2009: 229) for specific examples in south-east Asia). A similar distrust of writing, especially contracts, can be seen today in the Himalayas. van Driem (2016) refers to anecdotes of language informants in Bhutan being fearful of signing contracts as part of a researcher's formal ethics process, and to request the use of such formalised and state-governed written language was seen as, at the very least, rude. As such, it is perhaps not enormously surprising that much of the Trans-Himalayan-speaking upland regions do not have any surviving literary tradition, or historical linguistic research as with the above, which can be drawn upon by contemporary linguistics.

The paucity of historical written traditions in the Trans-Himalayan family, especially when compared to the substantial diversity and divergence in all branches of the family, has meant that, while these historical languages have provided indispensable data for research into their descendants (e.g., into the development of forms in the various modern Tibetic languages), they have not provided a central foundation for reconstruction of any Trans-Himalayan proto language (Matisoff 2015) (in contrast with the importance of Latin, Ancient Greek, Sankrit, etc. in Indo-European linguistics, for instance).

### 3.4.2 Reconstruction work

Reconstruction of Trans-Himalayan languages has been attempted for much of the history of Western research on the family. A major early piece of work in this tradition is Benedict (1972), originally written in the early 1940s following the depression-era project *Sino-Tibetan Lingusitics* led by Robert Shafer, and remaining unpublished for some 30 years. The eventual 1972 publication features revisions and annotations by James Matisoff, including extra data from Matisoff's own research and other more recent findings. Matisoff (2003) reports that while many reconstructions have since been revised in light of new data, the cognate sets collected and collated by Benedict remain valid. Even more recent reconstructions, such as the aforementioned Matisoff (2003) (which attempts to reconstruct just the non-Sinitic branches of the family as per the Sinitic-divergent theory discussed in Section 3.3.2), have seen significant controversy, evident in the dialogue starting with Sagart's (2006) review of Matisoff (2003), and continuing to Matisoff's (2007) response and Sagart's (2008) subsequent reply. This handbook was the first major publication in the Sino-Tibetan Etymological Dictionary and Thesaurus (STEDT) project, running from 1987 to 2015, which has produced a sizeable dictionary of nearly 6,000 reconstructions to a Proto-Sino-Tibetan (Matisoff 2015).

In addition to this work at the family level, research has been undertaken to reconstruct the common ancestors for the numerous subfamilies. These include reconstructions of the Tani family (Sun 1993), Kukish languages (Van Bik 2009), East Bodish languages (Hyslop 2014a), and many

others, often themselves products of the STEDT project (such as Button (2011) and Bruhn (2014) in addition to those cited above).

### 3.5 Summary

While research on individual Trans-Himalayan languages, in particular those of states and religions, has a long history, widespread documentation of languages, in particular of endangered or minority languages, remains in its infancy. With this paucity of descriptive research across the very large family, a bigger picture view of the family as a whole in terms of its development remains unavailable. Despite various phylogenies being proposed by a number of studies discussed in Section 3.3.5, none have thus far been able to draw any stronger conclusions than have been drawn using the traditional comparative method, being a series of variously well established local subfamilies or unclear or unproven relation to each other beyond their position as Trans-Himalayan languages. The Trans-Himalayan family represents a useful platform for a broad typological survey such as this one, in that it is large and hugely varied, evidenced by the lasting uncertainty about the historical development of the family. However, is still constrained by its nature as a primary language family, as every language is, to the best of our knowledge, ultimately related to every other.

## Chapter 4

# Development of database

### 4.1 Overview

This chapter describes the development of the database of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages to be used for analysis, and the methodological decisions that were made throughout. Section 4.2 will discuss the collection of data, including the steps taken to ensure a representative cross-section of the Trans-Himalayan family. A number of cases containing multiple conflicting analyses are discussed in Section 4.3.7, including the decision-making process behind which analysis was ultimately used in this survey. Section 4.3 will address the specific features used to separate and categorise the languages surveyed; namely, the presence of various types of epistemic marking and reference to addressee perspective, among other features, as well as an example entry with a full explanation of Magar (Magaric: Nepal Grunow-Härsta 2008). The resulting findings will subsequently be presented in Chapter 5.

### 4.2 Collection

#### 4.2.1 Developing a representative sample

In conducting a large-scale survey of any language family, especially in a family as large and undescribed as the Trans-Himalayan family, it is impossible to consider every single language as would be methodologically speaking ideal. Instead, it is important to ensure that the languages surveyed demonstrate as accurate a representation of the family as a whole as is possible. This ensures that major areas and subgroups of the family are not left out. Failure to make such considerations may result in missing significant pieces of data, making any generalisations about the family invalid, or only applicable to some potentially arbitrary subset of the languages of the family. This was discussed in terms of the phylogenetic analyses presented in Section 3.3.5, in which large groups (such as Karenic in Sagart et al. (2019)) or small divergent groups (such as

Kho-Bwa or Siangic in Sagart et al. (2019) and M. Zhang et al. (2019)) are missed, along with their informative data, potentially shifting results in the wrong direction.

Section 3.3.4 introduced the set of subfamilies proposed by van Driem (2014) to represent a phylogeny-agnostic view of the Trans-Himalayan family. Using this set of subfamilies as a foundation for the selection of languages provides a solid foundation to ensure no language groups are missed, while also avoiding engaging with methodological debates with no real consequence on this thesis. That being said, simply selecting languages from each subfamily in equal number will not necessarily solve the issues in representativeness surrounding the statistical studies discussed in Section 3.3.2.

Van Driem (2014), while reflective of the state of description at its original time of writing, is at risk of being out of date by the current view of the family. For instance, more recent documentation work on Lhokpu, focussing on vocabulary and some verbal and nominal affixation, has suggested that the language is likely closely related to the Dhimalish languages of Dhimal and Toto (Grollmann & Gerber 2018). In addition to the linguistic evidence, the relationship is fairly easily justified geographically: Lhokpu is spoken in about three Chiwogs or village blocks (Singye, Sangloong Sangteng, and Thongsa Tobchhenthang) in Bhutan's Samtse Dzongkhag, which are between 15 and 30 kilometres upstream of Totopara in India, where the Toto language is spoken (Basumatary 2016). Neither language is geographically contiguous, however, with Dhimalish, though interestingly Grollmann & Gerber (2018) suggest that Lhokpu appears more closely related to Dhimal than Toto. Grollmann & Gerber (2018) also note that the Dhimalish subfamily including Dhimal and Toto is perhaps not as well proven or established as its inclusion in van Driem (2014) might suggest. Specifically, they argue that many of the shared forms are in fact shared much more widely than just Dhimal and Toto, and might therefore simply represent shared retentions from a much earlier proto-language. The geographic proximity of Lhokpu to Toto may also have little meaning for the historical development of the languages, as van Driem (2004) suggests that Lhokpu (or its ancestor) may have at one time been much more widespread across western Bhutan, and in fact be a substrate under Dzongkha.

Post & Burling (2017) note that three further subfamilies, all spoken in Arunachal Pradesh in the eastern Himalayas, remain merely speculative. Van Driem's (2014) Hrusish, Siangic, and Midzuish subfamilies may also not yet be sufficiently proven. While in every case there is some level of evidence to support the groupings, Hrusish and Midzuish may be simply explained by high degrees of contact, and all three subgroups are lacking the level of description necessary to confidently prove any subgroups (Post & Burling 2017). Blench & Post (2014) go even further, questioning whether or not it has been sufficiently proven that Siangic, Hrusish, Midzuish, Digarish, and Kho-Bwa are even Trans-Himalayan languages at all. Wu et al. (2022) use Bayesian phylogenetic analysis focussing on the languages of Arunachal Pradesh to attempt to shed some light on these groups (excluding the Siangic group, which was not included), and position them both

as members of the family in general and in relation to nearby neighbouring languages. They ultimately conclude that they mostly likely are related to the wider Trans-Himalayan family, though they diverged very early. Specifically, the Kho-Bwa languages may share a common ancestor from approximately 3,000 years before present, similar to that of the Ngwi-Burmese subfamily. Their divergence from their closest related subfamily of the Hrusish languages could have been yet earlier, at around 5500 years before present (Wu et al. 2022). Following this research, among others, the most recent update of Glottolog (at time of writing, 5.0) Hammarström et al. (2024) have separated the Hruso language from the Trans-Himalayan language family entirely, keeping the other members of van Driem's Hrusish family (Bangru and Sajolang) as a subfamily within the family.

Van Driem (2014) also groups together the Tibetic and East Bodish groups into a single Bodish subfamily. While it is clear that East Bodish languages are not a subgroup of Tibetic languages (Hyslop 2017), both M. Zhang et al. (2019) and H. Zhang et al. (2020), as well as wider literature, seem to agree that Tibetic languages and East Bodish languages do in turn share a fairly close common ancestor and can be rightly considered to share a branch. The decision of what level to draw the line at here seems similarly arbitrary as it does with the Ngwi-Burmese subfamily, especially given some uncertainty surrounding the membership of Tshangla in this combined Bodish subfamily (Thurgood 2017). Largely because of the large amount of literature available on the Tibetic<sup>1</sup> and East Bodish languages, and the availability of such data and insights to me from Gwendolyn Hyslop as my lead supervisor, East Bodish and Tibetic are separated here, contra van Driem (2014).

The challenges in producing a representative sample of the languages in the Trans-Himalayan family are a core problem in statistical models of Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020), but are also an issue that must be faced, in this project. In order to be able to make claims about the Trans-Himalayan family as a whole, an even spread of the languages in the family need to be examined. This selection need not be as precise when attempting to analyse a smaller set of languages manually, compared to the much larger scale computational analysis undertaken in Sagart et al. (2019), M. Zhang et al. (2019), and H. Zhang et al. (2020). That is, this project must consider data from the whole family to the extent that clades of divergent or conservative languages are not missed or misinterpreted; however, it is not attempting to develop any statistical measures of the language family whereby a greater level of coverage in one area might skew results. For example, by virtue of its older academic tradition, there is a much wider field of literature covering specifically Tibetic languages, with specific detail into the field of this project (such as Garrett (2001), de Villiers & Garfield (2017), Woodbury (1986), DeLancey (1986), and Zeisler (2024), among countless others), but little more than grammatical sketches in other areas. While this imbalance in available data would be unrepresentative in a statistical analysis,

---

<sup>1</sup>The term Tibetic is used here per Tournadre (2014).

the less quantitative and more qualitative approach of this project allows for a greater ability to account for these potential biases.

While the necessity to build a dataset that is as representative as possible is not nearly as strong with this project as with some others, the methodology by which the subfamilies were selected for van Driem (2014) does lend itself to prioritising smaller language groups with less available research. Because it is focussed on well-established subfamilies, and given that language groups with higher levels of research will likely have genetic relationships established to a deeper time depth or to a higher level, we can expect to see large groups of well researched languages given under a single subfamily, while smaller groups of underresearched languages will be listed separately. That is to say, there is not necessarily a similar amount of diversity within each of van Driem's (2014) subfamilies; rather, there is likely more diversity in the larger, more widely researched and therefore better established ones.

In practice, the effect of this is visible in the number of languages present in each subfamily, using Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024) as a guide. At the largest end of the scale is the Ngwi-Burmese subfamily, with 127 languages listed on Glottolog, the majority of which (101) are specifically from the subfamily's Ngwi (Loloish) branch. Behind this with 54 languages is the Kukish branch. The language counts for the other subfamilies are given in Table 4.1.

TABLE 4.1: *The number of languages in each of van Driem's (2014) subfamilies, per Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024).*

Subfamily	Number of languages
Lepcha	1
Meithei	1
Tshangla	1
Lhokpu <sup>2</sup>	1
Dura	1
Black Mountain	1
Pyu	1
Gongduk	1
Mru <sup>3</sup>	1
Tujia <sup>4</sup>	2
Magaric	2
Chepangic	2
Digarish	2

<sup>2</sup>Recent research suggests that Lhokpu may be closely related to the Dhimalish languages (Grollmann & Gerber 2018).

<sup>3</sup>Some evidence suggests that Hkongso may be more closely related to Mru (Wright 2009).

<sup>4</sup>Glottolog gives north and south varieties, though van Driem (2014) only gives one language.

Raji-Raute	2
Siangic	2
Midzuish <sup>5</sup>	2
Karbi <sup>6</sup>	2
Dhimalish	2-3
Ersuish	3
Hrusish <sup>7</sup>	3
Nungish	3
Bái <sup>8</sup>	3-6
Newaric	5
Nàic	5
East Bodish <sup>9</sup>	7
Ao	7
Kho-Bwa	7
Zeme	7
rGyalrongic	8
Kachinic <sup>10</sup>	9
Tangkhul	9
Tani	10
Angami-Pochuri	10
Qiangic	12
Tamangic	13
West Himalayish	15
Karenic	20
Sinitic	26
Brahmaputran <sup>11</sup>	29
Kiranti	31
Tibetic	44
Kukish	54
Ngwi-Burmese	127

<sup>5</sup>Called Kman-Meyor in Glottolog.

<sup>6</sup>Glottolog gives Hills and Amri varieties, though van Driem (2014) only gives one language.

<sup>7</sup>The Hruso language has been separated in Glottolog 5.0 to be a complete isolate, though Bangru and Sajolang remain under the label Miji.

<sup>8</sup>Membership of Caijia and Longjia unclear (Lü 2022).

<sup>9</sup>Grouped with Tibetan into “Bodish” in van Driem (2014).

<sup>10</sup>Called Jingpho-Luish in Glottolog.

<sup>11</sup>The Glottolog “Brahmaputran” branch also includes Kachinic/Jingpho-Luish, which van Driem (2014) separates.

Languages themselves were selected based on available documentation, using Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024) as a reference database for descriptive work available. To avoid accidentally selecting a particularly aberrant language and not properly representing a given subfamily, an initial goal of two languages per subfamily was set. For larger subfamilies, such as Ngwi-Burmese, Kukish, Tibetic, and Kiranti, more languages were surveyed both in an attempt to ensure even coverage of the larger subfamily. This also reflects the greater frame of reference for these languages.

There were a number of cases where it was possible to even survey two languages in a subfamily. The first case is the internal isolates discussed in Section 3.3.4. In addition, there are a number of smaller subfamilies that do not have the descriptive coverage to allow two languages to be surveyed; either there was only one described language in the subfamily, or there were multiple, but only one has any coverage of epistemic marking. This last point poses a problem in that in languages with more limited descriptive analyses available, it is difficult to tell if reference to epistemic marking is omitted because it would be outside the scope of the current stage of description, or because it simply does not exist in the language. There were also a small number of subfamilies for which no descriptive data could be found. In order to fill the gap in the data for Lhokpu, fieldwork in Bhutan was undertaken as part of this project, detailed in Appendix A (though, as mentioned above, Lhokpu may well be better classified as Dhimalish). Gongduk, another internal isolate spoken in Bhutan (van Driem 2001), also had no available data. During the course of this project, a grammar of Raji (Raji-Raute: Nepal) appears to have been published and listed on Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024), written by Dubi Nanda Dhakal, but I have not been able to access this. There is similarly no documentation available for the Digarish languages in English, and as such my information on these languages comes from personal communication with Rolf Hotz Molina and Naomi Peck, who are both working on PhD projects on these languages. For Digarish, and Midzuish, there are unpublished sketch grammars by Roger Blench available on his website, though these are specifically not for wider use so were not included in the survey.<sup>12</sup> Glottolog also notes a body of descriptive work on Kaman (Midzuish) in Mandarin, which was also not accessible for this project.

In terms of the much larger families, oversampling the Ngwi-Burmese family by assessing more than the two languages as discussed above can at least in part alleviate the arguable under-representation of the languages when accounting for the size of the subfamily. That being said, only adding one or two extra languages will not come close to balancing this statistic across the data. This is especially the case given that there are a number of subfamilies of which 50-100% of languages have been sampled. Again, the qualitative nature of the analysis being undertaken means that the essentially unavoidable imbalance of this measure (languages sampled in a sub-

<sup>12</sup><http://www.rogerblench.info/Language/NEI/Lingres/NEILINGRES.htm>

family as a percentage of that subfamily’s total number of languages) does not pose a problem as it does in quantitative statistical analyses.

With this goal of two languages per subfamily where possible—to be expanded upon after in larger subfamilies—languages were selected by the breadth of description available, as well as the recency of the description. Full published grammars were preferred over doctoral and Master’s theses, and newer studies were preferred over older ones. Regardless of the level of review or detail for the publication, analyses were taken (where no alternative analyses exist, see Sunwar discussed in Section 4.3.7) to be accurate, and no attempts were made to reanalyse data presented. In some cases, the usage of terminology is discussed in relation to the description provided, and (especially in Section 5.2.3 and Chapter 7) theoretical conclusions are drawn about data based on the analysis available, but beyond what is explicitly stated. In this latter case, it is possible that there exists further data which would disprove the analysis synthesised here, but were not included in the publication as they were not seen to be necessary by the original author.

Newer studies were preferred as they are more likely to discuss the categories and functions at issue in this thesis. As discussed in Chapter 1, studies into perspective-marking in Trans-Himalayan languages have become significantly more common over the past two decades. Much of the research undertaken prior to that, and even more so prior to the publication of Chafe & Nichols (1986), either does not consider perspective-marking at all, or does so in a way that is less immediately accessible in the context of contemporary theories and frameworks. It is often simply much easier to find the relevant information in a more recent publication.

As was mentioned above, some further data has been used from languages that appear regularly or in relevant places throughout the literature, even if they were not initially selected. In particular, discussions of the epistemic system in Lhasa Tibetan and early Tibetic languages are common throughout the literature (see, for instance, DeLancey (2012), Garrett (2001), Hill (2012, 2014), and Zemp (2021)). This is particularly relevant to the diachronic considerations discussed in Chapter 6. These languages are in addition to the set of languages surveyed systematically here, and as such are not included in the list of surveyed languages given in Appendix B.

#### 4.2.2 Challenges in the use of external analyses

A number of potential challenges exist in the use of analyses of other researchers as authoritative sources. As is discussed in Appendix A, as well as in Gawne (2020) and Grzech et al. (2020), epistemic-marking systems can be difficult to elicit, identify, or analyse, and needs to be recorded in highly naturalistic contexts to properly reflect the deictic conditions on the use of the forms. This thesis takes the analyses presented in secondary sources such as grammars as accurate representations of the language they describe. That is, I generally do not attempt to reanalyse data

presented in the sources used<sup>13</sup>, working on the assumption that while a description aims to present data that is sufficient to illustrate a given form or function, it will not necessarily present all data to preclude any other possible analyses considered by the researcher. In doing this, it trusts the sources to have undertaken methodologically sound analysis. It is, however, difficult to confirm in all cases the extent to which this is the case; *Gawne2017a* find that there is a lack of transparency in the literature regarding methodologies, either in data collection or analysis. In some instances, contrastive examples are presented with full explanations of the context around the data, both in terms of when it was said and how it was documented (e.g. the asymmetrical status of the speaker and addressee as community members in (Simon 2021: 300) describing epistemic forms in Rebkong Amdo Tibetan, see (37)), while in others, even if context for an utterance is given, it is not clear the environment in which it was documented (e.g. Plaisier (2007: 136) gives an example of the Lepcha mirative “discovery” particle, explaining the context behind the utterance, though does not say if the utterance was, for instance, elicited, or given as part of a narrative, or recorded as part of a conversation between two speakers). These challenges are, however, unavoidable. Possible solutions to this uncertainty and reliance on the quality of these analyses, such as relying more heavily on original data collection and analysis or contacting every author for detailed information on their data, are unfortunately outside the scope of this thesis. As such, it must be sufficient to take the data and analyses as is, keeping these challenges in mind when developing a database.

A further challenge in the use of this literature as a source of data and analyses is the description of a lack of certain functions. That is, it is not necessarily clear whether a lack of description of epistemic marking in a given grammar is reflective of a lack of said marking in the language, or rather of an omission in the presented analysis. This is particularly the case for descriptions with a smaller scope such as grammar sketches or Master’s theses. In cases where there is no apparent epistemic marking, this challenge was mitigated as much as possible by considering other literature on the language, as well as other related languages. Where more comprehensive descriptions were available in closely related languages, they were preferred. Of the 12 languages in the database with no epistemic marking documented, a small number are at risk of reflecting the state of description rather than the actual linguistic situation. Aung (2013), describing Kayah Monu (Karenic: Myanmar), is a Master’s thesis and cannot be expected to be as comprehensive as a full published grammar. Here, the description does appear, however, to be fairly comprehensive, and the lack of epistemic marking described is consistent with other languages spoken in the region. Genetti (2007) describes Dolakha Newar (Newaric: Nepal) without reference to any form of epistemic marking. This is a full published grammar, and can be assumed to be sufficiently

---

<sup>13</sup>There are instances where I use different terminology to the original author in order to relate it to other functionally similar systems in other languages. In these instances, I am still following the content of the analysis by the original author, only labelling it differently. I do propose a slightly altered analysis of some Kurtöp data in Section 7.2.2.1, though with the support of the original author.

comprehensive, but the lack of marking is unusual in an areal and genealogical sense, given the importance of the egophoric marking in the related Kathmandu Newar in the literature. It is, at the very least, clear from Genetti's description that the egophoric distinction in Kathmandu Newar verb suffixes is not present in Dolakha Newar. This challenge is also present at a smaller scale, as to whether or not individual epistemic functions are present in a language. In both cases, an awareness of these potential issues when considering the data is the only feasible mitigation strategy given the scope of the project.

## 4.3 Data collation

### 4.3.1 Database overview

After initial data collection, the notes and summaries written on each language (with reference back to the source material) were summarised into a database that marked whether or not a certain feature was present in a certain form or function in a given language. The database provides an easy-to-access and easy-to-reference summary of key features that were expected to be relevant to the analysis stages of the project. A limitation of this methodology is that it is reductive, and no such format will be able to succinctly *and* completely describe the full nature of even a single paradigm in a language. It is described here to explain how data from the numerous different sources were collated and referenced throughout the process of analysis, in order to more easily see any trends that did emerge and later more easily locate relevant data and examples. This does not mean that the features noted for each language at this stage are perfectly reflective of the actual typological categories described in Chapter 5. Rather, the more schematised summaries created here were used to develop those categories and act as a point of reference to the original sources. Given the rapidly growing body of descriptive work on Trans-Himalayan languages, particularly with regards to epistemic marking, and the scope of this project limiting my ability to confirm my understanding of the available analyses, I am treating this database as an ongoing project that I will continue to update as a resource for myself and others moving forward. With this in mind (and to avoid formatting challenges), the database is available online rather than being included as an appendix to this thesis. In doing so, it can continue to be updated and refined as necessary. The database is available at [cbodnaruk.com/database](http://cbodnaruk.com/database).

The database includes four sections: the scope and form of a given marking or paradigm (Section 4.3.2); the function of the marking(s) (Section 4.3.3); the extent to which addressee perspective has been described or suggested in the literature for the markings (Section 4.3.4); and other features such as the variety of functions in a single paradigm, or the presence of engagement marking on nominal or demonstrative structures (as per Evans et al. (2018b), Section 4.3.5). Additionally, the database records if anything of note in regards to these criteria (epistemic marking) could be found in the literature at all (in the few cases where the answer to this is no, the rest of the entry is

empty). In cases where a single language has multiple varied markings or paradigms, one record in the entry will contain multiple ‘yes’ responses to some features. For instance, a system could mark epistemic meaning as a verb suffix and a clause final particle, and no single designation is mutually exclusive with any other (aside from the question of the presence of said marking in the first place).

The analysis undertaken was, for reasons outlined in Section 4.2.1, primarily qualitative. This involved reading descriptions of epistemic systems in publications and sorting them into this database, and then using this broad overview to begin to draw preliminary theoretical and typological conclusions about the data overall. These preliminary conclusions were then compared specifically to the collected data by referencing the summaries collected in the database. The qualitative nature of the analysis meant that the database itself was not generally used directly for analysis, but as a point-of-reference database to quickly find relevant data and descriptions from the overall sample.

#### 4.3.2 Scope and form

This feature records where in a given clause the marking is located, and with what scope. Specifically, it tracks whether the marking occurs on Verbal Morphology, at the Noun Phrase level, on the Verb Phrase, or as a Discourse particle (i.e. at the speech act level). The specific forms of a given marking or paradigm are not recorded in the summary.

For example, in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan), the obligatory epistemic marking paradigm in the perfective aspect marking features such as mirativity, egophoricity, and evidentiality, appears in the form of a closed paradigm of compulsory suffixes attached to the main verb of a clause (Hyslop 2018b), shown in (8) and (9). This is recorded with a + in the “Verbal Morphology” column of the Scope and Form section. The same distinctions are marked in other domains with the use of specific copulas, recorded with a second + in the “Verb Phrase” column.

(8) Verbal Morphology

- a. *ngat ge-shang*  
1.SG.ABS go-PFV:EGO  
'I went.' (p.300)
- b. *tshe khit ge-mu*  
DM 3.SG.ABS go-PFV:IND  
'Then he left.' (p.303)

(9) Copulas

- a. *mau zangu ngaksi nawala*  
DN zangu QUOT COP.EXIS  
'There is this (thing) down there called "zangu":' (p.310)
- b. *Hâ-pa=the nâ*  
Hâ-DNZ=INDEF COP.EXIS.MIR  
'He is a Hâpa (from Hâ):' (p.310)

TABLE 4.2: *The number of languages showing epistemic marking in the grammatical domains described in Section 4.3.2.*

	Number	Percentage
Verb morphology	23	43%
Verb phrase	22	41%
Discourse particle	25	46%
Noun phrase	2	4%

Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2017)

Table 4.2 provides the number of languages showing forms in each of the grammatical domains or scopes described above. The percentages are given here as a proportion of the languages surveyed which exhibited any epistemic marking, ignoring those which were surveyed but did not appear to mark any epistemic distinctions grammatically. The table shows that, aside from nominal marking of epistemic meaning, which was very rare, perhaps as a result of the focus of this thesis on functions traditionally encoded on the verb, epistemic marking is generally evenly spread across domains of grammar.

### 4.3.3 Function of marking

The Function of Marking section describes the function of the form(s) in a paradigm in relation to the cross-linguistic categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement. It is split into two subsections, with the first recording instances of ‘prototypical’ forms of a given category. A column will have a + for instances where the given paradigm marks only the category in question, and where the paradigm closely reflects the definition of the category in the literature.

For instance, the conjunct/disjunct paradigm in Kathmandu Newar (Newaric: Nepal), as originally described in Hale (1980), fits very closely with the definitions given for egophoricity to the point that it is given as an illustrative example of egophoricity at its simplest level in San Roque et al. (2018: 3). As such, it would be marked with a + in the egophoricity column of the prototypical subsection. In a language such as the aforementioned Kurtöp, however, the marking of mirativity, egophoricity, and evidentiality all occur on different forms in the single paradigm, which as a result does not strictly adhere to the definitions given for such categories in the literature (DeLancey 2012, San Roque et al. 2018, Aikhenvald 2018).

In these cases where it would be insufficient to represent a paradigm as adhering to any well-defined category, another subsection recording loose examples of a given category is used. In this case, while not strictly fitting the definitions for a single mirative, egophoric, or evidential paradigm, the paradigm would be marked as having some broad instance of all three.

TABLE 4.3: *The number of languages showing any form of each of the traditional categories described in Section 4.3.3.*

	Number	Percentage
Epistemic Modality	27	41%
Evidentiality	48	73%
Egophoricity	15	23%
Engagement	9	14%
Mirative	34	52%

Table 4.3 provides the number of languages with any form of each of these categories, per the available data. It includes both more prototypical instances of categories, as well as those which are not necessarily described as fitting in a given category, but functionally appear closest to said category. As languages can mark more than one type of epistemic marking, the total numbers are greater than the total number of languages surveyed. As such, percentages are given as a proportion of the total languages surveyed for which data was available. It is clear from this table that epistemic marking is widespread across the languages surveyed, and given the representativeness of the survey, the Trans-Himalayan family as a whole.

#### 4.3.4 Described addressee-perspective

This section notes whether or not there are any cases of addressee-perspective either described or exemplified in the available literature on a given language, either in interrogative or declarative structures. This assessment is, even more so than the other areas presented here, reliant on the extent of literature coverage on a given language. It takes a certain level of detail for epistemic markers at all to be described, but a greater level of detail again for their interactions with the perspectives of speech act participants to be considered. For example, while Lidz (2010) gives a detailed and highly exemplified description of evidential and other epistemic marking in Yongning Na (Naic: PRC), she does not give any detail of the use of the evidential forms in questions, if they are allowed at all. On the other hand, Bodt (2020: 408) explicitly describes a mirative meaning of the Duhumbi (Kho-Bwa: India) copula *le* as marking the perspective of the addressee in declaratives, noting that the “speaker considers the information of the proposition with copula *le* as new to the addressee and relevant to him in the moment of speaking...”, contrasted with the copula *be?*, which does not carry this mirative meaning, exemplified in (10). While it is easy to give a definitive ‘yes’ where evidence is given in the literature, in many cases such as Yongning Na above, there is simply no reference made to any intersubjective-like features or cases (such as the common occurrence in evidentials in interrogatives (Aikhenvald 2018)). In these cases it is

not possible to say that grammaticalised intersubjectivity *does not* exist; rather, only that it has not yet been readily observed.

- (10) a. *Gonpa p<sup>h</sup>u t<sup>e</sup>haŋk<sup>h</sup>o le*  
temple mountain on-LOC COP.LE  
'The temple is on top of the mountain.' [New to the addressee]
- b. *Gonpa p<sup>h</sup>u t<sup>e</sup>haŋk<sup>h</sup>o be?*  
temple mountain on-LOC COP.EX  
'The temple is on top of the mountain.' [Neutral to the addressee]

Duhumbi (Kho-Bwa: India, Bodt 2020: 408, notes in relation to addressee added by me)

#### 4.3.5 Other features

Finally, the database records four other possible features that might be useful to quickly access and reference. These are the presence of mixed function paradigms—that is paradigms with forms that do not fit into a single established cross-linguistic category—as well as the presence of nominal engagement as referred to in the introduction to this section (Section 4.3), the diachronic source for the forms documented (where given), and whether or not forms are obligatory.

The first of these, the mixed paradigms, potentially closely mirror the cases where no prototypical example of a category is identified, but with a key difference. In cases where some form of subjective or intersubjective marking (such as evidentiality in the example given below) is spread across a number of different domains of a language's grammar, their structure does not fit into the aforementioned 'prototypical' category, nor do they fit into this 'mixed paradigm' group. For instance, in Meithei (S. L. Chelliah 1997: 295), evidentiality is marked across a number of different domains in the grammar, such as derivational morphology, clitics, and complementation, as opposed to being marked by a single discrete paradigm. It is worth noting that this "scattered" marking of evidentiality is widespread, and is by no means ignored in the literature (Aikhenvald 2014: 23). The example of Kurtöp, given above, however, does represent a mixed paradigm, where a single paradigm contains multiple different functional categories.

The presence of nominal engagement in Trans-Himalayan languages has not been widely documented, but it has the potential to provide insight into the development of verbal or clause-level marking in the wider family where they do appear. Nominal engagement has been documented in Purik Tibetan (Tibetic: India: Zemp 2021) and in Phola (Ngwi-Burmese, PRC: González Pérez 2023).

For example, in Purik Tibetan, demonstratives *de* and *e* are functionally contrastive in certain positions by the attentiveness of the addressee, with *e* working to redirect their attention to a referent (Zemp 2021), as opposed to a state of affairs already clear to both speech act participants. Examples of this are given in (11).

- (11) a. *kulik-po di-ka p<sup>h</sup>jal-la de*  
          key-DEF this-LOC hanging-DAT TOP  
          ‘The key’s hanging here (right in front of your eyes).’ (p.412)
- b. *sjuntsoqtsoq e*  
       deep.green TOP2  
       ‘Look, how green it is over there!’ (p.413)

Purik Tibetan (Tibetic:India Zemp 2021)

#### 4.3.6 Worked database entry

This section works through the classification of an example language to show how it this schema has been used in practice. It uses the description of Magar by Grunow-Härsta (2008) as it features distinctions across a number of the areas being recorded in the schema. The epistemic system in Magar is split across all three discrete systems, marking inferential and reportative evidentials, miratives, and quotatives.

##### 4.3.6.1 Brief description

Miratives in Magar are marked in a variety of forms, either nominalisations or related constructions. In (12), mirativity is marked the nominaliser *-o* followed by a grammaticalised copula now carrying aspectual meaning *le*.

- (12) a. *thapa i-lay le*  
       Thapa P.DEM-LOC COP  
       ‘Thapa is here.’ (non-mirative)
- b. *thapa i-lay le-o le*  
       Thapa P.DEM-LOC COP-MIR IMPF  
       ‘(I realize to my surprise that) Thapa is here!’ (mirative)

(Magar, Grunow-Härsta 2008: 480)

Grunow-Härsta (2008: 480) also gives one other nominaliser that can convey mirative meaning, a form *cyo c̄a*. The distribution of these forms tends to follow the person of the subject of the clause, with the latter *cyo c̄a* form mainly used for third-person subjects and the former *-o le* for subjects who are speech act participants, though (12) is a clear exception to this. The forms appear to always reflect a speaker-origo, including in questions, or reflect a character origo in narratives. Examples of speaker-origo in narratives for rhetorical effect are also given, though are described as “feigned” (p. 493). One example, reproduced in (13), may well show addressee-origo in a declarative construction. Here, the mirative is used both in an interrogative (see (13a)) and confirmation of that question (see (13b)). Given that information confirmed by the speaker cannot be in the moment new to said speaker, an alternative explanation for the function of the mirative here is necessary. Grunow-Härsta (2008: 486) explains the use of mirative in the response as not marking information as new to the speaker, but marking information as something they cannot

mentally integrate. An alternative view, at least of this data in isolation, is that the interrogative here is an explanation of disbelief on the part of the first speaker, hence marked with the mirative, and that the second speaker is also reflecting the first speaker's expression of disbelief. This is to say that the second speaker is agreeing that the first speaker is perhaps correct to use the mirative construction, arguably reflecting their addressee's perspective.

- (13) a. *mi-ja ma-phunh-o le-sa si-ca ale*  
POSS-child NEG-give birth-MIR IMPF-INFR die-ATT COP  
'She just died, undelivered!?'  
  
b. *ã ma-phunh-o le-a*  
yes NEG-give birth-MIR IMPF-PST  
'Yes, undelivered!'

(Magar, Grunow-Härsta 2008: 487)

Evidentiality in Magar is also marked across multiple grammatical domains. Direct first-hand evidence, or statements of general cultural fact, are unmarked; inferential evidentials are marked with the verb suffix *-sa*, and reportatives are marked with a particle *ta*. Grunow-Härsta (2008) gives a minimal triplet of these three meanings, reproduced in (14).

- (14) a. Direct  
*ho-se taf̪-rah-a*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come-PST  
'He has arrived.' (I see him.)  
  
b. Inferential  
*ho-se taf̪-rah-le-sa-a*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come-IMPF-INFR-PST  
'He has arrived.' (I see his bag.)  
  
c. Reportative  
*ho-se taf̪-rah-a ta*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come-PST REP  
'He has arrived.' (They say.)

(Magar, Grunow-Härsta 2008: 497)

In addition to these forms, there is also a quotative construction for direct quotes, formed with a subordinate clause and the speech verb *de* 'say' (p. 498). Unlike in some languages, the grammaticalised forms given in (14) are not obligatory, though it is not clear how this factors into Grunow-Härsta's analysis of the direct evidential as null-marked.

Both the inferential and reportative are used in interrogative structures, where they reflect the perspective of the addressee. Additionally, both are used in narratives, but with different functions. The inferential evidential is used in narratives when narrating a story told in images (see the Family Problems Picture Task in Section A.2.1), as well as reflecting the character's perspective, both in direct speech from the character, and in narration. The reportative is used very

widely in narrative, but references exclusively speaker perspective, marking the speaker's source of information for the narrative itself. The forms *-sa* INFR and *ta* REP, being marked respectively as a verb suffix and separate particle, can cooccur (p. 513). This marks reportative evidence for the speaker, whose sources in turn had inferential evidence.

Independent of these forms, Magar also has a set of epistemic modal markers that can cooccur with both miratives and evidentials, which can in turn cooccur with each other. On these grounds, Grunow-Härsta (2008) describes these as three distinct systems within the grammar. Given the formal difference in the location of the marking between the inferential and reportative marking, this could be further expanded to the point that there is no single paradigm of mutually exclusive forms filling the same grammatical slot in Magar. This "scattered" system is not uncommon in the region (Grunow-Härsta 2008: 480-481). In terms of the typology set out by Aikhenvald (2004), Magar would be a B1 system, marking visual, inferred, and reported evidence. As will be discussed in detail in Chapter 7, this does not manage to fully characterise the overall epistemic marking system (in a broad sense) of scattered morphemes in Magar. This is to say, in a system where all forms are marked in different grammatical slots and can cooccur with other in seemingly any combination, there is less justification to treat the forms traditionally classified as evidentiality as separate systems beyond the traditional theoretical boundaries against which I am advocating in this analysis.

#### 4.3.6.2 Representation in the summarised database

Table 4.4 shows the representation of this description of Magar in the database described above. The first section, the Language Metadata, provides basic information on the language, including its coordinates according to Glottolog. The next section, Scope and Form, notes that there is evidence of grammatical epistemic marking, and that it appears both as verbal morphology (the nominaliser component of the mirative and the inferential suffix) and as a discourse particle or at the speech act level (the copular component of the mirative and the reportative marker). The Function of Markings section notes that there is a system of epistemic modality marking (albeit with limited description), as well as an 'other' system that does not easily fit into a single group. This other system is then noted in the next section to feature functions of both mirative and evidential meanings, referring to the scattered system described above. Described Intersubjectivity notes that there is clear reference to the addressee's perspective in interrogative constructions, and potentially in declaratives (see (13)). Finally, in Other Features, no diachronic source is noted as none was given by Grunow-Härsta (2008). The fact that the system is not obligatory is noted, as is the lack of mixed paradigm or noted nominal engagement marking.

TABLE 4.4: *Magar*, described in Grunow-Härsta (2008), represented as an entry in the summarised database described in Section 4.3.

Language Metadata	
Language	Magar
Subfamily	Magaric
Source	Grunow-Härsta 2008
Glottolog Coordinates	27.41, 87.06
Scope and Form	
Evidence of epistemic marking	+
Verb Morphology	+
Noun Phrase	
Verb Phrase	
Discourse particle/speech act level	+
Function of Markings	
EM	+
Ev	
Ego	
Eng	
Mir	
Other?	+
EM	
Ev	+
Ego	
Eng	
Mir	+
Term(s) used in source	Mirative, Direct/Factual, Reportative, Inferred
Described Addressee-Perspective	
Evidence of AP in interrogative structures?	+
Evidence of AP in declarative structures?	+? [486-487], (c) reads a bit like IS
Other Features	
Diachronic Source?	
Obligatory	No
Mixed Paradigm	No
Nominal Engagement	No

#### 4.3.7 Languages with conflicting analyses

A challenge in taking the analyses presented in the literature at face value is that, in cases where multiple descriptions of a single language exist (as discussed in Section 3.3.1), there may be conflicting analyses of a particular form or function. This section presents a number of examples of cases where a decision had to be made, and discusses why that decision was made the way it was.

**Sunwar** In his initial descriptions of mirativity, DeLancey (1997) gives Sunwar (Kiranti: Nepal) as an example of a language showing grammaticalised mirativity. In particular, DeLancey describes the copulas *tshə* and *'baak-* as being distinguished based on the newness of knowledge. DeLancey reports that the use of each copula is conditioned independently of the source of the speaker's knowledge (evidentiality), but is rather conditioned by whether or not the information is known without qualification by the speaker (*tshə*) or is information they have just learned, through any of reportative, inferential, or direct evidence (*'baak-*). (15) shows this distinction in a minimal pair, with the non-mirative used in situations where the speaker has perhaps lived in Kathmandu and is familiar with Tangka, and the mirative form used in situations where the speaker perhaps did not know Tangka was in Kathmandu but had just seen him, or had just been told he was there (DeLancey 1997: 42).

- (15) a. *Tangka Kathmandu-m tshaa*  
Tangka Kathmandu-LOC TSHA.3SG  
'Tangka is in Kathmandu.' (non-mirative)
- b. *Tangka Kathmandu-m 'baâ-tə*  
Tangka Kathmandu-LOC exist-3.SG.PAST  
'Tangka is in Kathmandu.' (mirative)

Sunwar (Kiranti: Nepal, DeLancey 1997: 41-42)

Borchers (2008) disagrees with this analysis, though concedes that she and DeLancey are working with data from different Sunwar-speaking communities, and notes that DeLancey's analysis is working with a smaller corpus than hers. Borchers suggests instead that *'baak-* "is used to express the general way that things are", whereas *tshə* "denotes the concrete and recent state of affairs" (Borchers 2008: 164). Hill (2012) is also critical of DeLancey's analysis, contextualised in an overall argument against mirativity as valid cross-linguistic category. That being said, Hill's criticism of the mirative analysis, while referencing Borchers (2008) for support, relies only on a reanalysis of the meagre data presented in DeLancey (1997) (here in (15)) and a discussion of edge cases one would not reasonably expect DeLancey to have discussed given the level of detail in the description given in his paper.

The question thus becomes one of which analysis to follow for this typology. In this case, given Borchers reportedly worked with substantially more data, and spent a much longer time in the field than DeLancey (who worked with a single speaker living in the United States (DeLancey

TABLE 4.5: *The Lhasa Tibetan epistemic system, adapted from Garrett (2001: 11).*

	Ego	Direct	Indirect
Equative Copulas	<i>yin</i>		<i>red</i>
Existential Copulas	<i>yod</i>	<i>hdug</i>	<i>yodred</i>
Verbal Morphology (past) <sup>14</sup>	<i>-pa-yin</i>	<i>-song</i>	<i>-pa-red</i>

1997)), the analysis in Borchers (2008) was used. This is, in all reality, a fairly minor decision. It is a single point of data in a substantially larger database, and despite Hill's (2012) strong criticism of DeLancey's description, Borchers (2008) does give a number of possible reasons for the difference in analysis, and does not appear to go to the same length as Hill in actively attempting to refute DeLancey. There also continues to be other languages analysed as marking mirativity in the sample, and as such mirativity as a concept is still considered in this typological analysis.

**Lhasa Tibetan** Epistemic marking in Lhasa Tibetan varies between equative copular clauses, existential copular, and verb clauses. Specifically, there are two epistemic bases in the equative copula system, compared to three in the existential copulas and verbal morphology (DeLancey 2017). These forms are given in Table 4.5, adapted from Garrett (2001: 11) and using his labels for the 2-3 evidential bases. The precise labelling of these bases in a theoretical sense has been debated in the literature.

DeLancey (1997) suggests that, in the three-base systems, the *hdug* form represents information with an immediately accessible information source, which he analyses as mirative. As with Sunwar, Hill (2012) argues against this analysis, holding that the perceived immediacy of the evidence is a result of the actual condition for the use of the base being the presence of direct sensory evidence. This analysis of this form as marking direct sensory evidence is also followed by Garrett (2001), and is evident in the labelling of Table 4.5. More recently, DeLancey (2017) takes a stance between the two, suggesting that the form is conditioned by direct perception, but that (in some cases), this also logically suggests an immediacy of the origo's evidence that the information is also new (though not necessarily unexpected).

DeLancey (2017) also give a different analysis of the conditions for the use of *yodred* forms to Garrett (2001). While Garrett suggests that the forms are dependent on some indirect information source, such as hearsay or inference (though this is a major simplification of Garrett's very detailed analysis of the usage of the form), DeLancey suggests an analysis in which the *yodred* forms mark evidentially generic information, or information that is known without qualification or because of its status as general knowledge (DeLancey 2017: 392). A similar claim for a more generic factual evidential function is made for other Tibetic languages by Zemp (2020), specifically referring to copulas. In some cases, the factual or natural function is described for the cognate of the *yin* form (see also Bodnaruk (2023a)) contrasted against an evidentially marked

alternative, and some cases for the form in contrast to the cognate of the *yin* form. In these latter cases, this marks specific speaker involvement. Zemp (2020: 39) extends this second category to the equative copulas in Lhasa Tibetan, in which the *yin* form marks personal involvement, while the *red* form is evidentially neutral.

The distinction between *yin* and *red* has also been described as egophoric (San Roque et al. 2018), and does on the surface follow the expected pattern of egophoric contrasts. Hill & Gawne (2017) and Gawne (2017) argue against egophoricity as a separate cross-linguistic category, instead framing it as a specific evidential base contrasted with other evidential meanings and not with a NON-EGO form that is simply defined against it. This is similar to an analysis proposed by Garrett (2001), who described this as an evidential base labelled “ego”. This “egophoric evidential” (as opposed to an egophoric marker in a theoretically distinct category) generally agrees with Zemp’s (2021) analysis, though focusses on the three-way distinction seen in other areas of the Lhasa Tibetan grammar.

Unlike in Sunwar, the actual usage of the forms in Lhasa Tibetan is not substantially at odds in any of the literature. Rather, as the brief description above begins to summarise, the analyses differ in purely theoretical terms, questioning which cross-linguistic categories and theoretical frameworks and lenses best represent the well-described usage of the forms given in Table 4.5. This discussion is by no means unnecessary, but is importantly not one of description. In fact, the clearly blurred boundaries between the categories (the three-term system can and has been described as mirative, evidential, egophoric, and combinations of those three) begins to suggest that perhaps this siloed approach of analysis is insufficient here. This is a direction in which Hill & Gawne (2017) begin to move in, but perhaps face challenges in attempting to collapse the distinctions solely into the framework of evidentiality. Paradigms that appear to mark more than one category of epistemic marking will be further discussed in Section 5.2.3.1, and the theoretical implications in detail in Section 7.2.

# Chapter 5

## Epistemic marking across the Himalayas

### 5.1 Introduction

Having described the methodologies used in this project for the collection and analysis of language data above in Chapter 4, this chapter presents the initial findings and analysis as an overview of epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan family. Section 5.2 presents a number of initial typological observations made about the data collected in terms of form (Section 5.2.2) and function (Section 5.2.3). It develops a set of methods of classifying and describing epistemic-marking systems in Trans-Himalayan languages in preparation for a more in-depth theoretical discussion of these classifications and their implications in Chapter 7. Specifically, it presents a classification of epistemic systems in terms of the size of the system (divided between single-term and complex systems, Section 5.2.2.1); the scope of marking (from verbal morphology to clause-level marking, Section 5.2.2.2); the breadth of marking in terms of the traditional crosslinguistic categories of evidentiality, epistemic modality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement (Section 5.2.3.1); the strength of the claim over epistemic authority made by the speaker (Section 5.2.3.2); and finally the presence of explicitly marked reference to the perspective of the addressee (Section 5.2.3.3). These latter two typological classifications are of particular interest in theoretical terms, and are discussed in particular in Chapter 7. This chapter is primarily focussed on the description of the data in formal and functional terms, without an in-depth discussion of any theoretical implications of the data. Rather, Chapter 7 will develop the typological observations presented in this chapter, and in doing so, offer the argument in favour of a unified supercategory of epistemic marking as a formally valid analytical tool and concept across the family.

## 5.2 Classifications of the data

### 5.2.1 Classification introduction

This section presents a set of typological observations about the data as a precursor to the more theoretically oriented discussion in Chapter 7. These typologies, developed from patterns observed in the development of the database detailed in Chapter 4 but not necessarily reflecting the exact same categories, represent an attempt to categorise the data and develop an overview of the different forms and functions seen in epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family. It will also, where possible, compare these typological observations in geographic and genealogical terms. A fuller investigation into the historical implications of these trends can be found in Chapter 6. The section is divided into patterns based on form (Section 5.2.2) and function (Section 5.2.3), which are further broken down into their specific typological observations. These formal categories constitute the size of the system (Section 5.2.2.1), its grammatical scope (Section 5.2.2.2), and in terms of function, the breadth of functions marked in a system (Section 5.2.3.1), the strength of the claim over epistemic authority (Section 5.2.3.2), and finally the presence of reference to the perspective of the addressee (Section 5.2.3.3).

### 5.2.2 By forms

There is little similarity across the language family in the forms used to mark epistemics, as is to be expected given the propensity of, at the very least, mirative markers to be reanalysed and regrammaticalised from new forms (Hyslop 2020). However, there are some patterns evident from the position of the markers in syntactic or morphological terms observable in the data across a number of areas. This section will describe a number of observations about the data in terms of the patterns that emerge in the forms taken by different systems. The two main patterns occur in the size of the system, which can be broadly grouped into Single Term systems and Complex systems with some subgroups, and in the scope and location of the marking. The latter generally covers dedicated morphology, copulas, or nominalisers, and can take scope over a verb phrase or verb phrase, or an entire clause.

#### 5.2.2.1 Groupings by size of system

At the highest level, epistemic systems can be categorised into two general types: Single term systems and Complex systems. These systems are further each divided into two subtypes, given in Figure 5.1, and are discussed in detail below.

Single term systems are, as the name suggests, epistemic systems that are represented by a single term or form. There are two possible theoretical interpretations of the number of epistemic bases functionally represented in these systems. First, single term systems can be viewed as just that: a single form marking specific epistemic meaning counterposed to an unmarked speech act

- Single Term Systems
  - Reportative only A3 systems
  - Other Single Term Systems
- Complex Systems
  - Paradigmatic Systems
  - Scattered Systems

Figure 5.1: Types of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages per system size.

marking no specific epistemic meaning. Alternatively, single term systems may be analysed as marking two epistemic bases in opposition, with marked speech acts carrying a given epistemic meaning and unmarked speech acts explicitly carrying the opposite epistemic meaning. Perhaps a sufficient method of disambiguation between these two analyses is through obligation. If the form is obligatory in every context where its conditioning factors are fulfilled (that is, wherever it would contextually make sense), then it can be said that a speech act without said marking necessarily does not fulfil said conditioning factors, and the opposite of the form's meaning must be true.

For example, if a language obligatorily marks all speech acts known through reported evidence (as in, the speaker was told by someone), then, even though there is no alternative form, all statements not marked with the reportative evidential marker can be construed as reflecting the inverse of reportative evidence (any evidence other than reportative). This example is, however, hypothetical, as it is not clear from the literature available on single term systems that any such systems exist. Rather, the single term systems in the survey are all explicitly described as non-obligatory, or not specified. In these extant cases, the fact that the marker is not obligatory in every possible usage situation means that a statement without said marking does not necessarily imply a lack of, for instance, reportative meaning. Rather, there is simply no evidential information marked. The statement could still have reportative evidence, or it could not; it is not at all encoded. It can be presumed that, given that these forms are not necessarily used in every case where their core function is applicable, there must be some other motivational force behind their usage. While it can be hypothesised that something akin to emphasis may be responsible, there is not enough discussion or description on this in the relevant literature to draw any conclusions here.

The most common type of single term system seen in the data is those marking only reportative or quotative evidence. These systems are clearly covered by Aikhenvald's (2004) typology of evidential systems, categorised as type A3. Aikhenvald here takes the approach of presenting

these systems are two term systems, with the unmarked form existing counterposed in function to the marked form, an approach against which I argue above. Aikhenvald (2004) does point out, as does Gawne (2021), that there is an important theoretical difference between QUOTATIVE and REPORTATIVE evidentials which is not always represented in the literature. Here, quotative refers to markers used with reference to a specific named source, while reportative refers to markers denoting a reported or hearsay source for a given piece of information without the actual source of this information given. These are, in some cases, differentiated in Trans-Himalayan languages, an observation also made by Gawne (2021). In Karbi for instance (Internal isolate: India, Konnerth 2020: 560), there are separate quotative and reportative particles. As is often the case (Gawne 2021), the quotative particle *pu* is a grammaticalised and phonologically reduced (in the loss of tone) form of the verb *pù* 'say', and is used primarily in directly quoted speech, as in (16a). Additionally, there is a dedicated reportative marker *tànghò* used for reported speech without a named source, as in (16b). Notably in Karbi, the quotative *pu* can also be used for indirectly reported speech (without a named source), as in (16c). This system is categorised in the comparative case study undertaken in Chapter 6 as having a simple-term reportative system. It is classified as such in order to group it with other systems that mark only reportative evidence for the sake of comparison. This is despite the system technically marking two slightly different epistemic bases contrasted by the presence of a named source of the reported information.

- (16) a. *[nang=chenék-Cē pēi a-tūm] pu*  
1/2:NSUBJ=torture-NEG mother POSS-PL QUOT  
“She won’t torture you, mothers”, he said.’ (p. 560)
- b. *Bēy a-tūm kortè bàng-kethòm dō tànghò*  
CLAN POSS-PL brother CLF:HUM:PL-three EXIST REP  
‘... there were three Bey brothers, they say.’ (p. 562)
- c. *a-ingjìr=tā dō pu*  
POSS-sister=ADD EXIST QUOT  
‘... they also had a sister, it is said.’ (p. 561)

(Karbi, Konnerth 2020)

In cases where the quotative is descended from a verb of speech, it can be difficult to determine whether or not a form is a grammaticalised morpheme or just another use of the verb. In the case of Karbi above, the phonological reduction is a key indication that the form is actually grammaticalised. In Eastern Kayah (Karenic: Myanmar, Solnit 1986), however, the quotative construction is marked with a form that is identical to the verb ‘say’. This poses a question of how to establish whether or not a form is in fact a quotative marker that has been grammaticalised, or simply a periphrastic quotative construction involving a verbum dicendi. One possible method of distinction in situations where no other evidence of grammaticalisation is available (as may be the case in languages with minimal morphology, such as in North-East India under influence from Tai languages (Post & Burling 2017)) is to consider what range of verba dicendi are available for

use in these constructions. In cases where a form has grammaticalised as a quotative marker, one might expect to only see the one verbum dicendi used in said quotative constructions, whereas in cases where the construction remains periphrastic, there may be a selection of available verbs with different meanings.

Two cases—Atong (Brahmaputran: India, van Breugel 2014) and Ersu (Ersuish: PRC, Sihong Zhang 2013)—have been noted as having a quotative form which appears to be in the process of being grammaticalised. In Atong, older speakers appear to mark the quotative with the verb *no* ‘say’ and the factitive enclitic *=wa*, whereas the form in younger speakers appears to simply be the verb ‘say’ used by itself as a clitic *=no* in its own right (van Breugel 2014: 408). In Ersu, this change is evident in an analysis of the etymology of the five varied quotative markers, rather than being visible across living generations of speakers. Here, the five quotative forms are all fairly transparently derived from the verbum dicendi *dzi* ‘say’, with various forms being used in different parts of the grammar of the language and with different scopes. This verb, while understood as meaning ‘say’ by speakers, is marginal, and no longer used in natural speech by speakers. The form *dzi* appears to have partly grammaticalised, having fallen out of usage as a verb in its own right, but not entirely, as it is still understood as a verb by speakers, and the quotative constructions using it have not yet fully reified in their usage (Sihong Zhang 2014).

A number of systems have also been described marking a single epistemic base other than the reportative discussed above. Some of these include other evidential bases, or mirativity. Given mirativity as a concept was excluded from Aikhenvald (2004), no categorisation for these latter systems exists in an evidential framework. In some cases a form given is, by its description, seemingly mirative, but is not specifically termed as such in the literature. In Anong, Sun & Liu (2009) describe a series of interjections, expressing a given emotion or reaction. These forms are reported to generally occur outside the sentence. For instance, the three “surprise markers” (Sun & Liu 2009: 111) occur at the start of a speech act in the given examples, marking mirative meaning but arguably existing outside the clause entirely. In Black Mountain Mönpa, only van Driem (1995) is detailed enough to mention any epistemic marking, describing a verbal suffix *-go* which marks new information. It is not described as mirative, as the source predates DeLancey (1997) and the introduction of the term.

In Western Tamang (Tamangic: Nepal), Regmi & Regmi (2018) describe a mirative suffix *-nyam* as part of a category otherwise marking epistemic modality. When viewed from an evidential-exclusive perspective, this marker, described as also having inferential evidential connotations, would be a single term; however, there is a logical theoretical connection between the mirative marker and the certainty and dubitative markers alongside it, described by Regmi & Regmi (2018). In marking information that is new or unexpected, Regmi & Regmi (2018) describe the marked information as not yet fully integrated into the speaker’s knowledge structure. This can, alongside

the other epistemic modal markers, be seen in terms of speaker confidence: as well as often being inferential, the speaker is asserting less confidence over a given proposition.

Contrasted with these single term systems are what I here refer to here as COMPLEX SYSTEMS. These systems, in contrast with the ambiguous or lack of oppositionally contrastive forms seen in single term systems, mark epistemic bases that are often in direct opposition to one another. These systems also fall into two subtypes, paradigmatic systems, wherein the epistemic contrasts are marked within a single paradigm or slot on the verb (introduced in Section 2.5.1), and scattered systems, wherein contrasts are marked across different parts of the grammar (introduced in Section 2.5.1.1). These scattered systems have previously been described for evidentials in the literature such as Aikhenvald (2004), and will not be investigated at length here.

In paradigmatic systems, the epistemic-marking system in a language is contained within a single (often verbal) paradigm, occupying a single slot on the verb, comprising a set of clause-final particles, or some other set of grammatical forms. These paradigms can, however, be restricted to a specific domain of the grammar of a language, and there may be multiple paradigms across different domains. In any of these cases, the key defining feature of paradigmatic systems is that contrastive or oppositional epistemic bases are marked in formally equivalent ways. The precise definition of paradigms and paradigmatic systems is discussed in detail in Section 2.5.1.

The system of verbal morphology in the perfective aspect in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2018b) is an archetypal paradigmatic system of epistemic marking. There are five mutually exclusive suffixes, marking a wide variety of epistemic meanings, including mirativity, unequal epistemic authority, visual evidence, and speaker confidence. These forms all fit in the same slot after the verb, marking both perfective aspect and their given epistemic meanings. Some of these are given in (17), where it can be seen that the forms are representative of a single epistemic meaning selected out of a number of options.

- (17) a. *ngat ge-shang*  
1.ABS go-**PFV.EGO**  
'I went.' (Exclusive knowledge) (Hyslop 2018b: 130)
- b. *khit ge-pala*  
3.ABS go-**PFV**  
'S/he went.' (Non-exclusive knowledge) (Hyslop 2018b: 130)
- c. *tshe khit ge-mu*  
DM 3.ABS go-**PFV.INFER**  
'Then he left.' (Inferred) (Hyslop 2014b: 115)

Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan)

The paradigm of existential copulas in Kurtöp is also epistemically conditioned (Hyslop 2014b), though the epistemic bases do not perfectly align with those in the perfective aspect. Specifically, the perfective distinction between *-shang* and *-pala* governed by unequal epistemic authority is

not marked in the existential copulas. There is a more complete description and discussion of Kurtöp verbal morphology in Section 7.2.2.1.

Scattered systems are demonstrated in Magar, described in Section 4.3.6, in which epistemic meaning for a single clause can be marked across multiple areas of the grammar of the language. This is distinct from languages with multiple paradigmatic systems as described above. In those cases, a single given clause draws from a single paradigm occupying a single grammatical slot, even though there may be other epistemic paradigms in other areas of the language that would be used in other clauses. Here, a single clause draws epistemic marking from across multiple areas of grammar at once. As with paradigmatic systems, whether or not these forms are mutually exclusive varies from language to language. Some languages allow the cooccurrence of epistemic markers (e.g., Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC, Honkasalo 2019), discussed in Section 7.2.2.2), while others do not. In the case of Magar, a single clause may have mirative marking in the form of a nominalised construction, inferential marking in the form of a verb suffix, reportative marking in the form of a particle, or unmarked direct visual evidence. These are shown in (12) and (14), and again in (18) for convenience. A minimal set of all forms was not available in the publications, so a second unmarked, direct example has been given in (18d) for the sake of comparison with its mirative form in (18e).

(18) Evidential Contrasts

a. Direct (Unmarked)

*ho-se        taf̪-rah-a*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come-PST  
'He has arrived.' (I see him.)

b. Inferential (Verbal morphology)

*ho-se        taf̪-rah-le-sa-a*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come--IMPF-INFR-PST  
'He has arrived.' (I see his bag.)

c. Reportative (Particle)

*ho-se        taf̪-rah-a        ta*  
D.DEM-DEF reach-come-PST REP  
'He has arrived.' (They say.)

d. Non-mirative, Direct (Unmarked)

*thapa i-lay        le*  
Thapa P.DEM-LOC COP  
'Thapa is here.'

e. Mirative (Nominalisation)

*thapa i-lay        le-o        le*  
Thapa P.DEM-LOC COP-HAB IMPF  
'(I realize to my surprise that) Thapa is here!'

Magar (Magaric: Nepal, Grunow-Härsta 2008: 480, 497)

Languages can show a mix of paradigmatic and scattered systems, including in a single grammatical domain. One may see a paradigmatic system of epistemic marking in, for instance, the copulas of a language, and a scattered system in some part of the verbal morphology. One may also see a partially paradigmatic system of epistemic marking, with some epistemic bases marked by forms occupying the same grammatical slot and others marked in other areas of the grammar. For instance, in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, discussed in detail in Section 7.2.2.1) in the perfective aspect, epistemic contrasts are marked primarily by verbal suffixes, but with two clitics marking some epistemic meaning (Hyslop 2014b).

There are also languages with scattered systems where the use of epistemic marking is not obligatory. In some cases, unmarked speech acts are assumed to denote high epistemic authority on the SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER gradient (to be properly introduced in Section 5.2.3.2), in line with typological observations made by others. Here, where some epistemic base is considered the default, the question regarding the difference between a non-obligatory marking and an obligatory marking with a null morpheme constituent again arises. For the sake of brevity, they will be considered equivalent in this discussion. In Yongning Na (Naic: PRC), Lidz (2010) reports a four-way distinction between in one domain of the grammar of the language between direct, inferential, reportative, and quotative evidence (C3 per Aikhenvald (2004)). According to Lidz (2010), the direct evidential base is unmarked both formally and functionally. Presumably, the description of the direct evidential base as functionally unmarked suggests that it is considered the default meaning, and as such is presumed when no other epistemic meaning is marked. This follows the tendency for the unmarked or default epistemic base to be the one closest to the speaker in epistemic terms. In this sense, this epistemic marking in Yongning Na, which can be seen as either non-obligatory or obligatory with a functionally and formally unmarked direct evidential base, fits into the theoretical framework established in this section regarding the construction of speech acts. This is because, in any case where a formally epistemically unmarked speech act still carries a specific epistemic meaning, the decision to not use any epistemic marker is equally as meaningful as the decision to use a specific one.

The alternative to these situations is those in which a lack of epistemic marking is genuinely epistemically neutral. For this to be possible, the speech acts that would fulfil the conditions of a marked epistemic base must also be grammatical, or otherwise not unusual to native speakers without said marking. For example, a mirative marker may add flair to a story, but may not be totally compulsory, as noted for Khroskyabs by Taylor-Adams & Lhawa (2020: 46). In Dhimal (Dhimalish: Nepal), the mirative particle *la* is used in narratives to highlight information for the addressee, though it is not specifically described how obligatory the form is (King 2009: 254). Specific description of non-obligatory forms such as these does not appear to be widespread in the literature, but in theoretical terms this does present a situation in which it is harder to argue that all possible epistemic bases are being considered in every speech act, as there is a decision

TABLE 5.1: *The number of languages surveyed in each of the typological categories presented in Section 5.2.2.1.*

	Number	Percentage
No Epistemic Marking	12	19%
Single Term: A3	8	13%
Single Term: Other	11	18%
Complex: Scattered	7	11%
Complex: Paradigmatic	24	39%
Total	62	100%

(not marking any epistemic meaning) that truly does not involve reference to any epistemic base by the speaker.

The total number of languages showing examples of typological category presented in this section is given in Table 5.1. Here, languages have only been included once, by their most salient categorisation, even though these distinctions can be more gradual than binary, as discussed above. This data is plotted geographically for analysis alongside historical factors in Chapter 6.

### 5.2.2.2 Groupings by scope and position

Epistemic marking overall tends to appear in Trans-Himalayan languages in the form of nominalisations, copulas, or as dedicated morphology. This observation builds on Grunow-Härsta (2008), who, citing Noonan (2008), notes a tendency for mirative marking to take the form of nominalisation in the Central and Western Himalayan region, contrasted with the use of copulas in “Bodish”<sup>1</sup> (p. 480) languages. This contrast can be extended to include otherwise non-contrastive morphology to cover much of the family, as well as to cover epistemic marking more broadly. As can be seen in (18), a single language can also exhibit all of these across a system, as well as in single forms, discussed below. Dedicated morphology too, can take multiple forms. Differentiated from nominalisers as they have no derivational function, dedicated morphology can take scope over a verb or a full clause. This is to say that in some cases, forms are marked directly on the verb or as particles with clear scope over a verb phrase, whereas in others, forms are marked as clause-final particles or enclitics with scope over the entire clause. In any of these cases, forms are purely inflectional, and do not have the derivational component of the nominalisers.

A different case of nominalisations affecting epistemic marking can be seen in Milang (Siangic: India, Modi 2017), in which all basic clauses and finite verbs reflect an egophoric meaning or claim over epistemic authority unless neutralised by a nominalisation construction. In this case, the nominaliser can be analysed as carrying a specific non-egophoric meaning, though Modi (2017)

---

<sup>1</sup>This is given in quotes as it is not necessarily clear without further disambiguation what this term means. Here, it appears to include Suwnar (Kiranti: Nepal), suggesting a very broad use of the term.

rather analyses the construction as a neutralisation of a meaning inherent in clauses with finite verbs, rather than any meaning marked by a specific piece of morphology in any case.

Copulas marking epistemic contrasts are particularly common across the Tibetic subfamily (Zemp 2020), though they can be found in other languages with substantial contact with Tibetic languages (e.g., East Bodish languages such as Kurtöp (Hyslop 2020) and Tawang Monpa (Tombleston 2020), West Himalayish languages such as Chhitkul-Rakchham (Martinez 2021)). This is also applicable to Lhokpu (likely Dhimalish: Bhutan), which has potentially had significant contact with Dzongkha, though no influence has yet been proven at this point in time. An epistemic distinction in copulas can also be seen in Duhumbi (Duhumbi: Kho-Bwa, Bodt 2020), a language which does not have any direct contact with Tibetic languages due to a buffer of Tshangla and East Bodish languages to its North and West.

In a number of Tibetic languages in particular, a combination of nominalisers and copulas has been grammaticalised into verbal morphology. A set of these forms in Lhasa Tibetan are given in Table 5.2. The nominalisers *-ki* and *-pa* are used in conjunction with epistemically contrastive copulas to form finite verb suffixes. Interestingly, the tense/aspectual meaning is not only encoded by the choice of nominaliser, but also the set of copulas used. That is, aside from the direct form *-song* which does not follow this pattern but rather uses a grammaticalised form of a verb of motion, the perfective (or simple past in Garrett (2001)) uses the equative copulas and the nominaliser *-pa*, while the future uses the equative copulas instead with the nominaliser *-ki*. In both cases, the direct form is either formally separate or missing, as the Lhasa Tibetan equative copulas only exhibit a two-way contrast. On the other hand, the imperfective aspect shares the nominaliser *-ki* with the future forms, but uses the three-term system of the existential copulas *yod*, *hdug* and *yodred*. Here, the nominalisers themselves do not carry the epistemic meaning, but serve, at least diachronically, as a means for the attachment of the epistemically contrastive copulas onto the verb, and synchronically also mark other parts of the tense/aspect system. This does not on the surface appear to be a similar process to the systems in which nominalisers also carry epistemic meaning. This is demonstrated by a comparison of the Lhasa Tibetan paradigm given in Table 5.2 and (19) from Meithei (Internal Isolate: India, S. L. Chelliah 1997: 296), in which a similar construction of nominaliser-copula is evident. While in Lhasa Tibetan, the copulas carry epistemic meaning in isolation and continue to do so when further grammaticalised into a verbal paradigm, in Meithei it is the nominaliser *-jat*, glossed by S. L. Chelliah (1997) as TYPE, that carries the epistemic meaning of inferential evidence, and carries such meaning when not followed by a copula. As such, not all nominalisers used in association with epistemically contrastive forms are themselves necessarily epistemically contrastive. As such, while the Meithei form of *-jat* would be classified as a nominaliser-type epistemic marking, the Lhasa Tibetan nominalisers *-ki* and *-pa* would not be treated in such a typology at all, as they do not on their own encode epistemic meaning. It is possible that the epistemically contrastive nominalisers did

TABLE 5.2: *Lhasa Tibetan finite verb suffixes by tense/aspectual and epistemic meaning, adapted from DeLancey (2017) and Garrett (2001).*

	perfective	imperfective	future
ego	- <i>pa-yin</i>	- <i>ki-yod</i>	- <i>ki-yin</i>
direct	- <i>song</i>	- <i>ki-hdug</i>	
indirect	- <i>pa-red</i>	- <i>ki-yodred</i>	- <i>ki-red</i>

develop diachronically through a pathway that at one point looked similar to the system in Lhasa Tibetan. In fact DeLancey (2017) notes that the copula component of the direct imperfective suffix -*ki-hdug* is regularly omitted in speech, leaving the direct imperfective marker as simply the nominaliser -*ki*, still contrasted against the ego and indirect forms -*ki-yod* and -*ki-yodred*. While an interesting question worth further consideration, the possible diachronic origins for the epistemic nominaliser forms, or the potential future development of the Lhasa Tibetan forms are not necessarily relevant for a synchronic typological overview of the systems and fall outside the scope of this project.

- (19) *məsi phúrlábejatni*  
 mə-si phú-lábə-jat-ni  
 NM-PDET beat-HAVING-TYPE-COP  
 ‘It looks like it might have been beaten’  
 (Meithei, S. L. Chelliah 1997: 296)

### 5.2.3 By functions

While the above categorisations focussed on differences in the forms of system—that is, the morphological or syntactic descriptions of system—this section will focus on functional differences, or differences in semantic or pragmatic content. Functions can be construed in two ways, producing identical results but providing different theoretical perspectives, as introduced in Section 2.6. One is to discuss functions of forms in a system as carrying a given meaning, and to say that speakers select a form based on this meaning. Given the inherent deictic nature of epistemic marking, however, it can also be helpful to view forms as having their usage determined by a series of conditions, which are assessed by the speaker during speech. In essence, forms can be viewed as carrying their meaning inherently; or, they can be considered as being made up of a series of conditions or criteria informing their usage. The distinction between these two methods was discussed in greater detail in Section 2.6. Both will be used in this section, and in Section 7.2.1 for the sake of clarity in explanation.

This section will present three typological observations of the functions of epistemic systems. Firstly, Section 5.2.3.1 discusses variation in the breadth of functions marked within an epistemic system. Section 5.2.3.2 presents a cline of functions in terms of their closeness in terms of author-

ity to the epistemic origo. Finally, Section 5.2.3.3 discusses variation in the presence of markings which reflect the perspective of the addressee across interrogative and declarative constructions.

#### 5.2.3.1 Groupings by breadth of functions

An ongoing challenge in the literature is the analysis of epistemic systems that mark functions traditionally divided across multiple categories. This is contrasted with systems that fit into a single category such as evidentiality or egophoricity. These mixed systems, which will be described here in formal terms and discussed in greater detail in more theoretical terms in Chapter 7, are a subset of the complex systems discussed in Section 5.2.2.1, as they are definitionally made up of multiple terms. Mixed systems can be seen in the paradigmatic systems also described in Section 5.2.2.1, with Kurtöp being something of an archetypal example, marking meanings that fall across evidentiality, egophoricity, engagement, and mirativity (Hyslop 2020). Another such system is found in Eastern Geshiza, in which epistemic meaning is marked through a single paradigm with meanings covering both evidentiality and engagement, detailed in Section 7.2.2.2.

Regarding these mixed systems, there is a valid question as to whether an alternative system marking only epistemic meanings from a single category exists. There are a number of potential arguments against this. Firstly, there is often an inherent connection between evidential meaning and epistemic modal meaning (Boye 2012), in which forms marking worse evidence (e.g. inferential as opposed to visual) also carry a lower level of epistemic support. Such systems can still be described in terms of evidentiality, however, and the epistemic modal meanings can be treated as secondary, as argued by Aikhenvald (2004), if the epistemic modal is taken as a little more than an inherent logical result of evidential meaning. There is an argument in Hill (2012) that DeLancey's (1997) analysis of the Lhasa Tibetan existential copula *hdug* as mirative is better explained as a direct visual evidential, with the mirative meaning being similarly explained as a logical result of the often immediate nature of the information being represented. In these senses, many epistemic forms can be analysed as marking other epistemic meanings as secondary or logically implied. The category of mixed systems refers more specifically then to systems in which these cross-categorical functions occur on different forms. This is seen in, for example, Kurtöp and Eastern Geshiza. Such distinctions are in opposition to secondary or potentially logically predictable meanings of a single form.

Contrasted with these mixed systems are systems that clearly fit into a single category when considering only primary meanings and not the logically resultant secondary meanings discussed above. These are systems such as the commonly cited egophoric distinction in Kathmandu Newar, or the evidential system in Lhasa Tibetan as per the analysis by Gawne (2020), in which the egophoric or participatory base is analysed as a form of evidentiality. In both of these cases, however, it must be considered whether or not this egophoric-only or evidential-only label is necessarily the most accurate; or if, separate to logically resultant secondary meanings, there are

other factors conditioning the use of the forms that would cause challenges for an analysis of the system solely within the framework of a single category.

As will be discussed in Chapter 7, even in languages wherein a system appears on the surface to be conditioned by a single category, the selection of epistemic forms is also informed by other, often social, factors. For instance in Lhasa Tibetan, the ego evidential base can also be used with information that was not directly experienced by the speaker but by close relations such as family members (Tournadre 2008), meaning that the speaker's relationship with the agent of the sentence is also a relevant consideration. Similarly, the use of the two egophoric bases in Kathmandu Newar, or of a potential third egophorically unmarked form, may be conditioned by the social status of speaker and addressee in relation to each other (Singh Shrestha 2023). These extra factors conditioning the use of these forms are potentially distinct from the secondary meanings discussed above, in that they are not logically resultant from the primary meaning. As argued by Boye (2012), the lower epistemic support (in terms of epistemic modality) of forms with weaker evidence is not a conditioning factor in the use of the form, but a logical implication drawn from the primary meaning. This is comparable to the use of egophoric marking when referencing the experiences of close relations, or the use of non-egophorics when referencing the experiences of people of lower social status, as in Lhasa Tibetan or Kathmandu Newar. Here, the additional meaning this non-canonical usage adds to the egophoric or non-egophoric markers is not a logical implication inherent to the primary meaning of the form, but a separate meaning or functional condition. One method of distinguishing these is whether or not this additional meaning would break the condition of the primary meaning. In the case of the egophoric marking discussed, the forms are able to be used outside the more commonly cited conditions for egophoric marking given these additional conditions - they break the basic conditions and are as such additional primary meanings or conditioning factors in the use of a form. The lower support of inferential evidence however, is not a meaning outside the canonical use of inferential evidentials, and is as such not a separate conditioning factor in the use of the form.

In any case, this distinction between mixed and single category systems is, following the argument being presented in this thesis, a purely theoretical consideration. A system can only mark functions across theoretical boundaries if those theoretical boundaries have been drawn such that a system crosses them. As can be seen from the wide variation in analyses and the lively discussions in the literature on the boundaries between categories as discussed in Chapter 1 (e.g. DeLancey (2012), Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012), and Hill (2012, 2020) among others), the way in which these boundaries are drawn is not necessarily arbitrary, but is certainly open to varied interpretation. As such, the existence of a contrast between systems that mark functions only in one traditionally described category as opposed to systems that mark functions across multiple categories is dependent on the boundaries as they have been drawn. This argument largely relies on an assumption, however, that these traditional categories do only exist in theoretical terms.

That is, this idea that a distinction between intra- and inter-category systems is purely theoretical because it is dependent on the theoretical boundaries drawn to form said categories is not valid if the categories and their boundaries are not purely theoretical, but exist somehow in more concrete terms beyond the analysis of a linguist. The widespread existence, however, of solely “evidential” systems, among others, suggests that there is a real typological justification for these categories, but, as will be argued in greater detail in Chapter 7, this does not extend to every system marking evidential-type distinctions.

#### 5.2.3.2 SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER contrasts

A common feature of epistemic marking across the Himalayas is a contrast between a higher level of personal involvement and a lower one. This has been observed previously by Zemp et al. (2021), who noted a number of common equipollent distinctions in which forms are defined against each other. Here, I propose that many of these forms, even when not initially defined as egophoric or relating to speaker authority, can be analysed as marking a very general SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER contrast. While the boundaries of SPEAKER and NON-SPEAKER and conditions by which they are assessed are widely varied, many of the epistemic-marking systems surveyed in this project can be seen as fundamentally contrasting between knowledge closer to the speaker in some way, or further from the speaker. Similar observations have been made previously regarding the functions of evidential marking in use with reference primarily to languages spoken in South America by Bergqvist & Grzech (2023), who note that more recent descriptive projects on evidential marking have found that they often mark “ownership of knowledge” as opposed to the traditional definition of “information source” (p. 2). Commonly observed conditions for this contrast are given below.

1. Speaker authority
2. Speaker volition
3. Speaker evidence

The terminology presented here is by no means perfect, and it bears acknowledgement that the SPEAKER form is not necessarily always aligned with the speaker themselves, but can be aligned with the evidential origo. While in declarative utterances this is an unnecessarily specific distinction, in interrogative utterances, many languages shift the origo to the addressee, and as such, the forms here described with the SPEAKER label would actually mark a higher level of epistemic authority on the part of said addressee. This origo-shift is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 7, but is not totally consistent across all languages, nor across all forms within languages.

While some SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinctions appear in binary or equipollent opposition (either the speaker has authority or does not), others appear as a scale from epistemically closest to the speaker to furthest away. In these scalar contrasts, there may be a larger number of more fine-grained epistemic bases marked, with conditions on their use varying widely and often covering

multiple traditional cross-linguistic categories. Across these SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinctions, there appears to be a tendency for the SPEAKER form (or, closest form in scalar systems) to be less marked or unmarked, for instance in many Tibetic languages, in which the form claiming higher speaker authority is a reflex of the simple copula *yin*, while contrastive forms are morphologically complex (Bodnaruk 2023a, Zemp et al. 2021). This is in line with observations by Aikhenvald (2004) on evidentiality, as well as by Garrett (2001), who argues with regards to Lhasa Tibetan that the egophoric base (the most SPEAKER form in the epistemic system) is the most general form, and that the other, NON-SPEAKER forms are more specified. While all forms in Lhasa Tibetan are formally marked, it follows that, were one form to be unmarked, it would be the most general. With this analysis and the general observation that SPEAKER forms are more likely to be unmarked (out of the available epistemic bases, where any form is unmarked), the conclusion of a default SPEAKER interpretation of communication when no further clarification is provided can be more broadly extended. The assumption of a default function is also explicit in Milang, as well as potentially in Galo, both discussed below.

**Speaker authority** To an extent, every contrast discussed here is conditioned by some assessment of speaker (or, more specifically origo) authority, though here I specifically refer to contrasts that appear to be conditioned solely by an assessment of epistemic authority by a speaker without reference to the specific source of said authority. Milang (Siangic: India, Modi 2017) exhibits an equipollent SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinction at a much more fundamental level than is seen in many other languages, in that all unmarked predicates are speaker-authority in function. Speaker-authority is taken as a default for all unmarked predicates, and in order to communicate non-speaker-authority, the predicate must be nominalised in order to neutralise this inherent speaker-authority (Modi 2017: 455). Modi uses the term EGOPHORIC to refer to this, though I avoid that term here as the distribution of the speaker-authority forms is much wider than the standard distribution of egophorics as discussed in Section 2.4.3. For example, while (20a) would fit into the common narrow definition of egophoricity, (20b)—in which the speaker is claiming epistemic authority over an event in which they are not the subject (or, for that matter, at all involved)—would not.

- (20) a. *ŋa tutu.*  
*ŋa tu-tu*  
 1.SG eat-PFV  
 ‘I ate.’  
 (Milang, Modi 2017: 455)
- b. *joon bozar yitu.*  
*joon bozar yi-tu*  
 John market go-PFV  
 ‘John went to the market’  
 (Milang, Modi 2017: 456)

Modi notes that even in non-first-person clauses, this speaker-authority meaning is visible in two ways—through pragmatic and social restrictions—as well as through opposition with the non-speaker-authority constructions to be presented below. In pragmatic terms, a statement such as that in (20b) implies a direct knowledge on the part of the speaker; Modi notably reports that it would be considered improper, if not directly very rude, to question this knowledge (e.g., asking ‘How do you know?’) (Modi p.c. 2018). Simply by using the unmarked predicate structure, a speaker claims clear epistemic authority over an event to the extent that it ought not even be questioned.

If a speaker did not have grounds to make this claim, however, they must neutralise this speaker-authority function through the use of a nominaliser and a particle, as in (21). Here, the nominaliser *pi* is followed by a particle *la* or *pi*, with reportative evidential or low epistemic support functions respectively.

- (21) *joon bozar yitupila* / *yitunipi*  
       joon bozar yi-tu-*ji*-la | yi-tu-*ni*-*pi*  
       John market go-PFV-NZR:SUBJ-REP | go-PFV-NZR:SUBJ-UCRT  
       ‘John went to the market. (I am told) | (I am not sure)’

(Milang, Modi 2017: 457, given as two examples in source and combined here)

As in many cases where a SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinction can be seen, there are further epistemic meanings that can be marked in Milang using particles after the nominaliser. Two forms are given in (21), though there are many more, carrying various meanings that could be interpreted as epistemic (e.g. ignorance, strong assertions, inferential evidence) (Modi 2017: 273).

A similar situation is hypothesised in Galo (Tani: India), in which speakers reported an expectation that in sentences unmarked for evidentials the speaker “must be ‘absolutely sure’ of the information represented”, though it is not totally clear if this is a function of the construction as in Milang or just a logical result of the unspecified evidential component (Post 2013: 112). That said, outside of this possible speaker-authority meaning, other domains of the language’s grammar do exhibit unambiguous egophoric marking. These unambiguous egophoric markers show a similar condition on their use as the Milang data, in that they are also conditioned by an assessment of speaker authority rather than speaker volition. While they are much closer to canonical egophorics in their restriction to first-person declaratives and second-person interrogatives, cases where a speaker has no volition over an action are still marked as speaker-authority. This is demonstrated in (22); a report that the speaker fell from a balcony (specifically without meaning to, and likely even directly against their intentions) still uses the egophoric affix *tó* as opposed to the inverse *gée*, labelled ALTERPHORIC by Post (2013).

- (22) *ŋó koodāa tokkà olōo tobá*  
*ŋó koodāa tokkà ò-lòo-tó-bá*  
**1SG balcony ABL.UP fall.from.height-DOWNWARD-EGO-PFV:DIR**  
‘I fell from the balcony (I know, I experienced it.)’ (Galo, Post 2013: 123, emphasis from source)

Post also gives being hungry as an example of a non-volitional event still marked egophoric, or SPEAKER, in first person.

Both Galo and Milang show forms described in their sources as egophoric, and both are, in their function, reasonably close to the definition given in Chapter 1. In addition to these, there are other forms that can be considered conditioned by speaker authority that fall further from the definition of egophorics, discussed below.

Even within this group of authority-conditioned contrasts, there is a large variation in the exact boundaries of these conditions, evident in the two examples given above. In Milang, speaker authority can extend to third-person statements. The speaker needs visual evidence, and presumably needs a higher level of authority than the listener, but can claim epistemic authority even if they did not directly experience it. In Galo on the other hand, while a claim of epistemic authority is not conditioned by volition, it is still limited to first-person experience.

There are further ways still to draw lines of distinction, including with partial reference to volition. Some dialects of Amdo Tibetan combine both volitional and some non-volitional events into the single SPEAKER form (Tribur 2019). Tribur (2019) specifically gives the following two criteria for the use of the ego form in the Gcig.Sgril (rNgaba) variety: either that the speaker was a “controlling and volitional participant” in the event (Tribur 2019: 383), or that the speaker was directly affected by the event and they were aware of it for its entire duration. Similarly, for copulative clauses, non-volitional authority can be claimed where there is a suitable level of social proximity from the speaker to the subject, though the acceptability of these forms conditioned by social authority can vary from village to village (Tribur 2019: 213). These forms will be discussed further in Chapter 7.

**Speaker volition** The primary egophoric base in Lhasa Tibetan is restricted to situations where the speaker had direct volition over the first-person event. Compare (22) with (23) below. The egophoric form is disallowed; or, as noted by Garrett (2001), it can be interpreted with the alternative meaning ‘I will pretend to be sick’.

- (23) \* *sang.nyin nga na-gi-yin*  
tomorrow 1.SG sick-FUT-EGO  
‘Tomorrow I will be sick.’ (Lhasa Tibetan, Garrett 2001: 164)

Lhasa Tibetan does not, however, treat non-volitional first-person actions as equal to events for which the speaker has observed evidence, but rather in the perfective aspect introduces a distinction between the primary egophoric base given above, for first-person agents, and a separate

form for first-person patients and experiencers. This SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinction is more finely divided than in Galo and Milang above. A correct form of (23) (though in the perfective) is given in (24a), in which the suffix *-byung* marks the first-person experiencer. In (24b), the breadth of this experiencer category is shown, in that *-byung* can also be used with first-person patients, as the speaker still has first-hand interior knowledge of the event and claim epistemic authority thereby, but to a lesser extent than if they were a volitional agent.

- (24) a. *khasa      nga na-byung*  
           yesterday 1.SG sick-**PFV.EXP.EGO**  
           'Yesterday I got sick.' (Lhasa Tibetan, Garrett 2001: 169)
- b. *kho-s      nga-r      gzhus-byung*  
           3.SG-ERG 1.SG-DAT hit-**PFV.EXP.EGO**  
           'He hit me.' (Lhasa Tibetan, DeLancey 2017: 395)

Gawne presents a number of examples of cognates of this form with similar functions in a number of Tibetic languages Gawne (2017: 66), as well as outside the Himalayas, but does not mention any non-Tibetic Trans-Himalayan languages with this marking. Over the course of this study, I have also not identified any non-Tibetic languages with this marking.

In the Rebkong variety of Amdo Tibetan, Simon (2021) reports a different condition separating speaker-volition forms from non-speaker-volition. Unlike in the rNgaba variety, discussed above, cases in which the speaker has a claim to epistemic support without direct involvement have a separate form, labelled as the EGO-AUTHORITATIVE (Simon 2021: 300). This is separate from the Lhasa Tibetan distinction above in that it does not require any participation from the speaker in the statement, agent, patient, or otherwise, but does require a social position to claim said authority, more similar to the SPEAKER form in Milang.

**Speaker evidence** Speaker evidence conditions the selection of epistemic marking in many, if not most, of the surveyed languages with epistemic marking. This is not a surprise, as evidential marking is both widespread and widely studied across the Himalayas. This section will present these conditions (that is, evidential marking) as a criterion by which a speaker can claim authority (or a lack thereof) over a statement. In opposition to the distinctions discussed above—in which the use of a SPEAKER form is conditioned by a general claim of authority, by specific volition, or by some combination of those two—these evidential systems can be viewed in the same framework as being conditioned by speaker evidence. Following the typology of system complexity and size discussed in Section 5.2.2, there is a large number of A3 system across the Trans-Himalayan family, and yet more considering that some languages with complex evidential systems such as Lisu (Bradley & Bradley 2002) and Akha (Thurgood 1986) can be reconstructed or traced back to A3 systems. These directly contrast the more complex systems with multiple epistemic bases. These A3 systems will be dealt with separately here as they pose a number of considerations to this proposed typology that are worth considering specifically.

While the conditions discussed above—authority and volition—have been presented primarily in binary terms, many systems conditioned by evidence have more distinctions and forms, and will be presented here as marking a scalar SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER, in which various types of evidence can be seen as more or less authoritative. In most cases, this scale is theoretically clear: visual evidence is the strongest, with the speaker claiming the most authority over evidence, and indirect evidence such as inference and hearsay is further from the SPEAKER. Languages that also mark an egophoric base, sometimes presented as conditioned by speaker evidence in Trans-Himalayan languages (Hill & Gawne 2017), as well as in other parts of the world such as Papua New Guinea (San Roque & Loughnane 2012), would see this base as closer to the SPEAKER end of the scale. The tendency for SPEAKER forms to be unmarked is further supported here, as cross-linguistically visual evidentials are more likely to be unmarked than evidentials with less epistemic authority (Aikhenvald 2004: 73). Aikhenvald does not factor egophoric evidentials into this typology however, as she treats them separately to evidentiality.

The placement of inferential and reportative evidence in systems where they are distinguished along this scale is not as immediately clear from the available evidence, but it is theoretically sound to suggest that inferential would be higher. This is because the source of the information for inferentials is still the self or the speaker, even if said knowledge is tempered by a lack of direct evidence. The responsibility over the information still lies with the epistemic origo, as the inference they made is still necessarily internal and their own idea. This is contrasted with reportatives, where the responsibility over the information is passed to some third party reporter, further reducing the strength of the claim by the speaker over the accuracy of the information.

This scale is supported by the wider literature in a number of additional ways. There is a common link between speaker confidence or certainty (epistemic modality) and speaker evidence (evidentiality), discussed in detail by Boye (2012), who draws a typological connection between “direct justification” (direct evidence) and “full support”, as well as between “indirect justification” and “partial support” (p.130). Similarly, Gawne (2021) notes that reportative evidentials in the Trans-Himalayan family often work to weaken a speaker’s claim of authority. This crossover is further exemplified throughout the descriptive literature. For example, in Dhimal (Dhimalish: India, King 2009: 245), the DEDUCTIVE particle *wa* carries a meaning of both inferential evidence, as well as low epistemic commitment by the speaker. In (25), the speaker avoids claiming authority over the presented, rather suggesting that while they have some reason to believe that someone does not understand, the opposite is also still possible.

- (25) *ma-gi-khe                    wa*  
 NEG-understand-IMPF DED  
 ‘Maybe he doesn’t understand.’ (Dhimal, King 2009: 245)

From King’s (2009) description, it is not immediately clear if either one of the functions is a primary function over the other, or if both functions are equally part of the meaning of the mor-

pheme. Zemp et al. (2021) also connect different evidential bases to different levels of speaker authority, with forms that involve a higher level of speaker involvement through action or perception, or stronger epistemic support, carrying higher speaker authority, though they do so only in binary terms.

The widespread A3 systems initially seem to cause problems for this typology, as they only mark the NON-SPEAKER end of the scale, and are often not part of a compulsory verbal paradigm. Rather, they tend to appear as sentence-final particles or optional clitics. In this, the explanation of SPEAKER forms being the unmarked forms goes some way to explain their distribution. The only form that is marked is the NON-SPEAKER form, while its SPEAKER counterpart remains unmarked. However, this runs the risk of suggesting that there is some null morpheme present in all other cases marking an utterance as SPEAKER. Rather, this can be considered in a similar frame as Post's (2013) discussions on Galo discussed above. There may be some actual unmarked meaning or expectation that, unless otherwise marked, the speaker does have a higher level of evidence—and subsequently authority—for a given claim. Aikhenvald (2004) also considers this challenge, noting that some systems with non-compulsory marking have been analysed not as having an unmarked SPEAKER base, but rather as epistemically or evidentially neutral. Specifically, Qiang (Qiangic: PRC LaPolla & Huang 2003: 197) has unmarked clauses with assumed high epistemic support, but not necessarily visual evidence. However, if unbacked claims of epistemic authority are considered as part of the same theoretical framework as they are here, and these bases are closer to the SPEAKER end of the scale, then to have an unmarked form carrying a claim of epistemic authority without specific reference to evidence would fit neatly into the wider typology.

**Edge cases** In no small part due to their contentious nature within the literature, miratives are difficult to position within this typology. While DeLancey (1997, 2012) argues that mirativity marks newness of information, and as such would in this typology fall under the “speaker authority” subcategory, Hill (2012) argues that it is, in most cases at least, a misconstrued visual evidential, placing it in the “speaker evidence” subcategory. There are, however, still many analyses of Trans-Himalayan languages with forms described as mirative, or in terms that would fit the general definition of mirativity as given in Chapter 1 that will be taken here at face value in lieu of any further analysis. In Tamang (Tamangic: Nepal, Owen-Smith 2014), the mirative form *-mi* appears to very strongly carry a sense of surprise and discovery, often being used in exclamations. (26) shows an example of this, with the speaker not only currently observing the redness of the addressee, but also surprised by it.

- (26) *<sup>2</sup>e:=Ø    <sup>2</sup>mahin <sup>2</sup>wala <sup>1</sup>ta-**mi***  
 2.SG=ABS very red happen-MIR  
 ‘You’ve become very red!’ (Owen-Smith 2014: 115)

In Tshangla (Internal isolate: Bhutan, Andvik 2010: 228), the mirative does appear to carry a much stronger visual evidential meaning. Specifically, the mirative meaning of the copula *la* is only available in some tense-aspect combinations, with *la* possibly carrying simple evidential meanings in, for instance, the past tense. (27a) and (27b) show a mirative/non-mirative pair, while (27c) shows the common usage of the *la* mirative marker in narrative, where, as discussed in Section 2.4.3, a standard mirative meaning would not make logical sense if marking surprise on the part of the speaker.

- (27) a. *Ama khamung zik-ca*  
mother clothes wash-COP  
'Mother is washing the clothes.' (p. 228)
- b. *Ama khamung zik-la*  
mother clothes wash-COP.MIR  
'Mother is evidently washing the clothes.' (p. 229)
- c. *Bozong zong-nyi, laga-gi chom-nyi che-wa-la*  
cassava boil-NF leaf-AGT wrap-NF plant-NOM-COP.MIR  
'Boiling the cassava and wrapping it in a leaf, they planted it.' (p. 230)

(Tshangla, Andvik 2010)

In their various binary comparisons, Zemp et al. (2021) argue that, in a paradigm distinguishing assimilated and new knowledge, the already assimilated knowledge would mark a larger claim over epistemic authority on the part of the speaker. The implication here is that mirative forms generally sit further from the SPEAKER than forms conditioned by a higher level of speaker awareness, either in the form of an egophoric, or as information the speaker *just knows*. Zemp et al. (2021) refer to this as a FACTUAL form. While this follows logically, it causes an apparent conflict when considering the epistemic systems of a number of Tibetic languages, due to the wide range of analyses of the systems present in the literature. Specifically, this conflict centres on the analysis of the two non-egophoric bases. In particular, Hill (2012) generally equates miratives with direct evidentials, a connection also noted above for Tshangla, on the grounds that recently acquired information is necessarily also supported by recently or immediately available evidence. If you have just learned or discovered something, there must be some impetus for said discovery, and presumably the immediacy of this impetus, whether visual or otherwise, would give a speaker grounds to make a stronger claim over epistemic authority. This initially appears to contrast with the analysis in Zemp et al. (2021), placing miratives (or new information) as further from the speaker than assimilated information. However, Zemp et al.'s (2021) FACTUAL epistemic base marking assimilated knowledge is arguably more equivalent to an egophoric one, which would represent a higher claim over epistemic authority than a visual evidential or a mirative regardless. This is because this FACTUAL base represents inalienable knowledge held by the speaker

that does not need any justification, as with egophorics. While the claim over epistemic authority is arguably similar, with FACTUAL epistemics, the inalienability of a piece of knowledge is more socially driven than the person-driven nature of egophorics.

Khatso (Ngwi-Burmese: PRC, Donlay 2019) appears to have very limited epistemic marking, as is common in Ngwi languages (Gerner 2013). The forms relevant to this survey appear limited to the EPSITEMIC EMPHATIC MARKERS and the STRONG ASSERTION MARKER (Donlay 2019: 437). The STRONG ASSERTION MARKER marks both strong positive epistemic support per Boye (2012), as well as contrastive knowledge, potentially similar to the COUNTER-EXPECTIVE forms found in Galo and Tangam (Tani: India, Post 2007, 2017). Of note here, however, are the EPISTEMIC EMPHATIC PARTICLES *po*<sup>53</sup> and *na*<sup>31</sup>. The two forms are similar in function, though *na*<sup>31</sup> is more forceful and less polite. The description of the forms given by Donlay is fairly brief, but suggests two conditions for their usage: either the speaker believes that the listener does not know the information, or that the listener ought to know the information through either hearsay, inference, or because it is general cultural knowledge. An example of the more polite form *po*<sup>53</sup> is reproduced in (28). Here, *po*<sup>53</sup> does not clearly mark that the listener does or does not already know the information; but seemingly that they may know it from evidence or knowledge available to them. In any case, it clearly marks that the listener does not have any epistemic authority over the given information.

- (28) *tei*<sup>31</sup>*tsy*      *to*<sup>33</sup> *la*<sup>24</sup>*ka*<sup>33</sup> *tsi*<sup>323</sup> *ma*<sup>31</sup> *tso*<sup>323</sup> ***po***<sup>53</sup>,      *a*<sup>33</sup> *tsei*<sup>35</sup>    *ni*<sup>31</sup>.  
 everything also play    NMLZ NEG EXIST EPIS.EMP that CL:TMP TOP  
 ‘There was nothing to play with (as you can imagine), in those days.’

(Khatso, Donlay 2019: 440)

These two conditions—either that the listener does not know the information, or does through some second-hand source—seem at first to be contradictory or opposite from Donlay’s description. However, from this description it appears that they can be unified in that they both reflect information over which a listener does not have *first-hand* authority or knowledge. That is, the usage of the form is predicated on the speaker assessing the listener to have no epistemic authority over the information, the logical result of which could be either the listener not knowing, or only knowing through some second hand source. While initially this may be as the speaker claiming sole authority, the fact that the forms can also be used with knowledge that is “part of the community’s culture or history” (Donlay 2019: 440), a situation in which presumably both speaker and listener (if both community members) would have equal epistemic authority, suggests that the form is not conditioned by any assessment of speaker authority, but solely of assessed listener authority. In this, it is not totally clear that this form marks a SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER distinction, but in marking a listener/non-listener distinction excluding speaker authority on a fairly specific definitional point, it can at the very least be viewed with some benefit in terms of this typology.

### 5.2.3.3 Presence of addressee-perspective

As has been discussed in earlier sections of this thesis, there is a typological tendency for epistemic marking to shift from speaker-perspective to addressee-perspective in interrogative structures (Aikhenvald 2004). This tendency has been attributed to a fundamental pragmatic expectation that questions in discourse are related to the addressee (Hill 2020), though it is not universal. The Meithei (Internal Isolate: India, S. L. Chelliah 1997: 296) nominaliser *-jat*, discussed in Section 5.2.2.2, can be combined with an interrogative marker to express a counterexpective meaning on the part of the speaker, rather than the typologically expected reflection of the addressee's perspective. Additionally, assessment of addressee-perspective in declarative constructions has also been identified. Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012) note that this appears particularly in mirative constructions, though it was missed in the original description of mirativity by DeLancey (1997). These examples offer a typology in which languages reflect addressee-perspective in grammatical epistemic systems in one or both of interrogative and declarative structures, or perhaps in neither. This is not to say by any means that there are languages that do not reflect addressee-perspective at all—this would violate the cooperative principle of conversation per Grice (1989). The nature of addressee-perspective and its role in epistemic marking will be discussed in more detail in Section 7.4. In many cases, the position of the origo in interrogative constructions, or even declarative ones, was simply not discussed in the descriptive literature. This does not mean, of course, that there is no reference to addressee-perspective in any of these epistemic systems, but perhaps more likely that it was simply not included in the scope of the description. In these cases, the language cannot be classified in any particular way.

## 5.3 Summary

This chapter has provided a descriptive overview of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages, specifically assessing the state of description in the family, and presenting a number of typological observations to broadly categorise systems. These typological observations have been separated into distinctions in form and in function, and are illustrated in brief in Figure 5.2.

The assessment of the state of description in the family took data from the Glottolog database (Hammarström et al. 2024), and found that there is, perhaps unsurprisingly, a high level of imbalance in the descriptive coverage of the various Trans-Himalayan subfamilies. Language groups with histories of greater social power, such as Sinitic and Tibetic, had higher levels of description, though other trends are harder to pinpoint. The lack of description of some internal isolates spoken in Bhutan, namely Lhokpu, Gongduk, and Black Mountain Mönpa, as well as the low level of coverage of the East Bodish family, are potentially attributable to lower levels of researcher access to the country. Similar factors may explain the lower level of description for subfamilies spoken in Arunachal Pradesh in India, though in some cases where the languages are also spoken across

<b>Form</b>	<b>Function</b>
Size of System <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Single Term Systems               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Reportative only A3 systems</li> <li>· Other Single Term Systems</li> </ul> </li> <li>* Complex Systems               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Paradigmatic Systems</li> <li>· Scattered Systems</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Breadth of Functions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Single Category</li> <li>* Mixed</li> </ul> Closeness to Speaker <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* SPEAKER</li> <li>* NON-SPEAKER</li> </ul> Presence of Addressee-perspective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Interrogatives</li> <li>* Declaratives</li> <li>* Absent</li> </ul>
Position and Scope of System <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* Copulas</li> <li>* Nominalisers</li> <li>* Dedicated Verb Markers               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Verbal Scope</li> <li>· Clausal Scope</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

Figure 5.2: A summary of the typological observations presented in this chapter, grouped by distinctions relating to form and to function.

the border in China, there is a higher level of non-English description (e.g. Digarish). Generally, when not influenced by the work of a specific researcher or research institute, the descriptions are overwhelmingly in English. The exception to this is for languages or language groups spoken in China, which have a larger number of descriptions written in Mandarin. In cases such as Sinitic, Tujia, and Ersuish, these Mandarin descriptions are the majority, while in others (e.g. Qiangic) these only make up a significant minority.

Two typological observations were made in terms of the forms of systems, focussing on trends in the sizes of systems, and of their formal scope. In terms of size, two main categories were observed: single term systems, and complex systems (Section 5.2.2.1). Within single term systems, there is a substantial subgroup of systems marking only reportative evidence, which are prominent enough to warrant separate consideration from the rest of the attested single term systems. Within the category of complex systems, a further pattern was observed between paradigmatic systems, in which all forms occupy the same grammatical slot, and scattered marking, in which forms are scattered across different domains of the grammar of a language. In terms of the formal position of marking, forms can also be categorised by whether they act as copulas, nominalisers, or other dedicated verbal marking (Section 5.2.2.2). Within the dedicated verbal marking, forms are seen to generally either take scope over either the verb or verb phrase, as a verb suffix or clitic that attaches directly to the verb phrase, or take scope over the entire clause, as with clause-final particles or clitics attached at a clause level.

Similarly, two key typological observations were made when considering the functions of forms in an epistemic system (Section 5.2.3.1). Firstly, distinction can be made, potentially in theoretical terms, between systems conditioned by a single category of meanings, such as solely evidentiality, and systems conditioned by meanings across multiple categories. A distinction was also drawn between secondary conditions to the use of forms, and implicational meanings that can be drawn from primary conditions. Secondly, a gradient was proposed to describe epistemic forms in terms of their closeness to the epistemic origo, referred to as the SPEAKER end of the scale and contrasted with the NON-SPEAKER end (Section 5.2.3.2). This scale exists independently of the other, more specific meaning of a form, such as its specific evidential information. Rather, it is based on the proposal that, generally speaking, forms in any given system (single category or mixed), can be placed on a scale from the level of authority being claimed or projected by or onto the epistemic origo; generally the speaker but commonly shifting to the addressee in interrogative structures.

As in any typological survey, there is no guarantee that these categorisations and descriptions of the data will be able to perfectly or fully capture the form and function of a given epistemic system. The precise usage of epistemic forms is far more nuanced than could be captured from descriptions, and, as discussed by Grzech et al. (2020), much of the depth and complexity of these systems is only now becoming clear. Rather, this typological survey attempts to capture common

areas of variation in the data, and more broadly the Trans-Himalayan family, and note the different realisations of epistemic marking in these areas.

# Chapter 6

## Historical development

### 6.1 Introduction

#### 6.1.1 Overview of chapter

There is a clear and well-documented trend for languages spoken in the Himalayan region to grammatically mark epistemic meaning in a variety of ways, as has been discussed in Chapter 5. While it is generally understood that epistemic marking spreads areally and tends to occur in geographic hotspots rather than along genealogical lines (Aikhenvald 2004: 288, San Roque & Loughnane 2012, Verhees 2018), there remains a question, at least in the Himalayas, as to the point of origin of the epistemic-marking sprachbund. That is, if epistemic marking has spread areally, where did it originate and how did it spread? Alternatively, is the widespread nature of the epistemic marking—which, while generally occurring within the Trans-Himalayan family—crosses subfamily boundaries, in fact due to areal diffusion, or is it better attributed to inheritance and convergent evolution of languages as a result of some other, extralinguistic factors?

This chapter investigates these questions using the typological observations presented in Chapter 5. It compares the contemporary geographic distribution of types of epistemic marking with historical extralinguistic factors that would have affected language contact and areal influence such as religious, economic, and political relationships. In doing so, it finds a correlation between the presence of complex epistemic systems and contact with Tibetic languages, suggesting two possibilities. Firstly, epistemic marking may be a relatively more recent innovation in the Trans-Himalayan family, having spread throughout the region using the spread and subsequent economic, political, and religious influence of the Tibetan Empire as a conduit. Alternatively, epistemic marking may predate the Tibetan Empire, potentially having been inherited from a proto-language, but lost in areas in contact with non-Trans-Himalayan languages. However, that with the data currently available, and more importantly with the lack of ability to

reconstruct forms and assess historical social situations in great detail, it is not possible to take a clear stance on either of the presented hypotheses.

Section 6.1.2 will present the schema used to categorise the languages into discrete groups for the purpose of mapping trends based on typologies discussed in Section 5.2.2.1, while Section 6.2 presents this map, along with some initial observations. Section 6.3 will detail the possible extra-linguistic historical factors that may have influenced the development of epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan languages, dividing the Trans-Himalayan-speaking area into eight regions and investigating them individually. It finds generally widespread contact with Tibetic speakers across combinations of economic, political, or religious domains, excepting areas further afield or blocked by mountains such as the Myanmar area. Section 6.4 will take factors presented in Section 6.3 and propose two possible explanations given above for the development of epistemic marking in the family in detail. The key pieces of knowledge we lack—namely information on the time depth of the development of evidential forms in various languages, the historical prevalence of multilingualism in Tibetic-adjacent communities, historical community sizes, and evidence of clearly cognate forms—are discussed in Section 6.5. Section 6.6 presents a number of specific case studies that provide more specific insights into the historical possibilities for the development of these systems. While it is possible to claim that either one of the presented hypotheses is the “correct” one, as is so often the case with language, it seems likely given the evidence that will be discussed that the reality is a more complex mix of the two, with different types of language contact occurring over different time periods.

### 6.1.2 Schematising epistemics

In order to assess large-scale patterns or trends across the languages surveyed, the data must be grouped into categories according to their epistemic systems. Of course, there is no way to do this without losing substantial amounts of nuance and detail from the data. For this purpose, this section will assess the data using a typological schema developed from the observations presented in Section 5.2.2.1, grouping epistemic systems in terms of their size. A two-tier distinction was presented in Section 5.2.2.1, dividing systems into Complex and Single Term systems, which were in turn divided into Scattered and Paradigmatic, and A3 (Reportative) systems and others, respectively.

For the most part, the schema used here has sufficient dividing the systems into cohesive groups in order to draw reasonable conclusions. There are, of course, some cases where the detail lost in this schema does provide deeper insights into possible historical development routes, and as such specific data in select examples will be presented in Section 6.6. Similarly, the division between paradigmatic and scattered systems can be blurry. In schematising the data for this representation, judgements had to be made as to how to categorise the data that are not necessarily completely clear-cut or doubtless. That is, while the typology of systems appearing

either paradigmatic or scattered is not untrue, in practice the scale has a more extensive gradient than expected. For example, even a language treated as an archetypal example of a paradigmatic system such as Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2020) has multiple paradigms marking epistemic meaning across various parts of the grammar, namely verbal morphology and copulas. A number of languages also have systems of either clause or sentence final particles (e.g., Dhimal (King 2009), Kadu (Sangdong 2012), Namuzi (Pavlík 2017), Munya (Bai 2019), Poumai Naga (Veikho 2021)). The prevalence of these particles across the family has been noted prior (DeLancey 2011), and often mark functions beyond epistemics. Whether or not these sets of particles can be considered a single paradigm is requires a depth of consideration that cannot not be answered here due to space limitations, though is discussed in Section 2.5.1. Considering that they fill the same grammatical slot, however, they have been classified here as paradigmatic provided that they have multiple epistemic forms within the set of final particles.

The schema organises languages into five categories:

- Complex Epistemic Systems
  - Paradigmatic
  - Scattered
- Single Term Systems
  - A3 Systems
  - Other Systems
- No Epistemic Marking

#### 6.1.2.1 Complex epistemic systems

The first category contains epistemic systems with multiple possible epistemic bases encoded throughout the grammar. That is, there is a distinction between multiple epistemic bases, either in a single paradigm, or dispersed across various grammatical domains (paradigmatic or scattered). To some extent, this category is defined against the next (Single Term Systems, divided into A3 systems and others) by exclusion, and is clear opposition to the last (No Epistemic Marking). Systems that fall into this category include the well-described system in Lhasa Tibetan (DeLancey 2017), and Akha (Thurgood 1986).

#### 6.1.2.2 Single term systems

Single Term Systems, as established in Section 5.2.2.1, refer to systems which mark either a single epistemic base, or a single epistemic contrast depending on the analysis. The category is further divided into two, A3 systems and others.

“A3” systems as described in Aikhenvald (2004) mark only reported evidence. These systems are separate as they represent a sizeable subset of the languages surveyed. Their prevalence in Trans-Himalayan languages is by no means a fact that has gone unnoticed in the literature, Gawne (2021) provides an in-depth analysis of reported evidence across the family (with a far more detailed survey than managed in this thesis), and finds it to be prevalent across the family, as part of a larger paradigm or by itself.

Finally, other single term systems, as with A3 systems, mark only one epistemic base. They are separated from A3 systems as no single other distinction is prevalent enough to warrant being grouped separately. That is, while these are formally similar to A3 systems, the widespread nature of sole marking of reportative evidence means that they are worth assessing separately.

#### 6.1.2.3 No epistemic marking

Finally, a number of languages surveyed showed no evidence of epistemic marking at all, and are grouped as such. The largest group of these languages is the Sinitic branch, the majority of which do not appear to exhibit any morphologically marked epistemic meaning (aside maybe from epistemic modality). Because epistemic marking is so notably absent from the subfamily (with the notable exception of Wutun, to be discussed in full in Section 6.4), these languages have largely been excluded from this section of the survey, and from the maps presented in this chapter.

## 6.2 Mapping the data

In order to efficiently visualise the distribution of epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan family, and subsequently establish any geographic patterns and assess their potential origins, the data has been overlaid on a map of the Himalayas and surrounds. The specifics of the creation of the map are discussed in Section 6.2.1, while some initial observations will be made in Section 6.2.2.

### 6.2.1 Map

Figure 6.1 shows the geographic distribution of a survey of languages, colour-coded according to their use of evidentiality. The map shows an approximation of the overall area in which Tibetic languages are spoken. Languages, of course, are not spoken in a single point, but are spread across variously sized areas. In some cases, at the scale of the map, a single point is sufficient to represent the total area in which a given language is spoken, though in many other cases, the points simply represent a centre point of the language’s distribution. The coordinates of all points were taken from Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024). These point data stem from a wide variety of different sources, including other databases such as Ethnologue and WALS, published data, and personal communication. For these reasons, they are used here as an approximation that is suitable for the

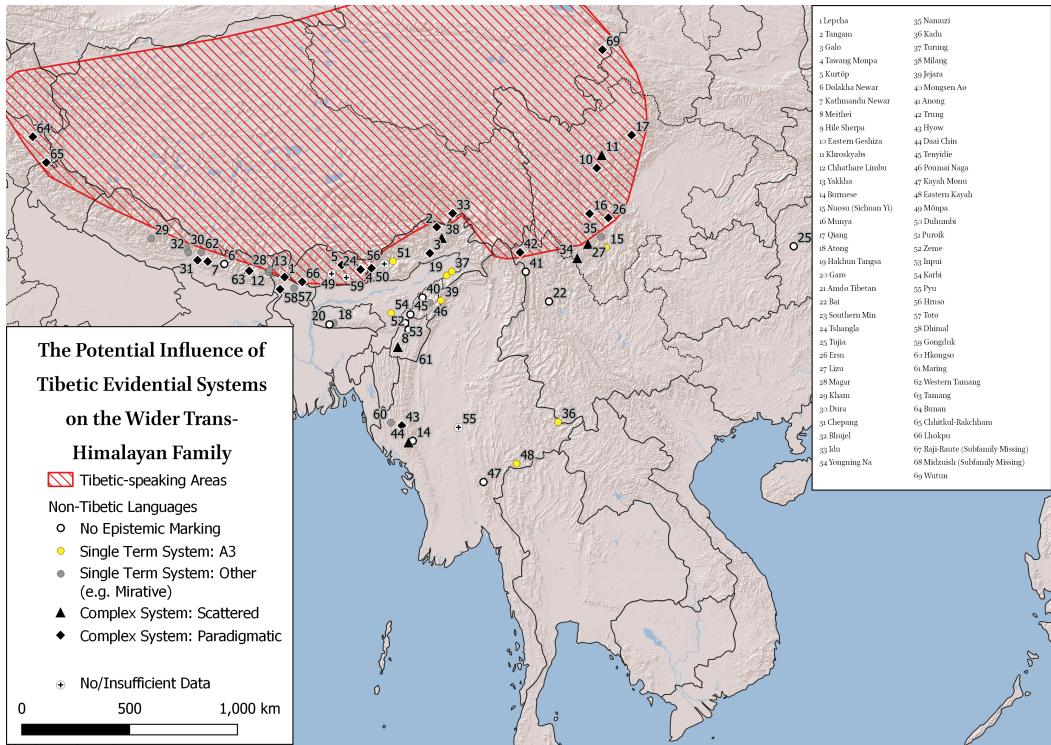


Figure 6.1: A survey of Trans-Himalayan languages by type of epistemic system

very general assessment of typological distribution, but would perhaps not be rigorous enough for close geographical work on a single language or subfamily.

Initial data for the Tibetic-speak area was similarly taken from Glottolog, with the full set of point data for languages within the “Early Old Tibetan” subgroup converted to a polygon (excluding the point representing Gyalsumdo, which at the time of analysis was seemingly erroneously located in central India rather than Nepal). This was then manually edited to more accurately represent the boundary regions as per the highly detailed survey in Tournadre & Suzuki (2023), as well as some more specific sources such as Post (2017), which references some Tibetic speakers seemingly not noted in Tournadre & Suzuki (2023).

### 6.2.2 Discussion, initial patterns

It is clear at first glance in Figure 6.1 that there are a significant number of black points (that is, complex evidential systems, either scattered or paradigmatic) near Tibetic-speaking areas, and fewer such points further away. This is, however, not a perfect correlation. A number of languages with complex evidential systems have been identified in the survey further afield. These languages, Meithei (S. L. Chelliah 1997), Hyow (Zakaria 2018), and Daai Chin (So-Hartmann 2009), will be discussed in Section 6.4.3. Similarly, there are some languages in proximity to Tibetic-speaking areas without complex evidential systems, such as Western Tamang (Regmi & Regmi 2018) and Dhimali (King 2009). In terms of the other categories, there is also a cluster of A3 repor-

tative systems and languages entirely lacking epistemic marking in North-East India, specifically in and around the state of Nagaland. This cluster is in part attributable to the linguistic diversity in the region. Many of the so-called fallen leaf subfamilies (van Driem 2014) are spoken in this area, often overlapping, and as a result there are many languages sampled. It is, however, of note how few of these contain of complex epistemic-marking systems. The possible reasons for this will be discussed at length below, namely in Section 6.4, but it certainly appears that whatever areal or other process that has led to the widespread prevalence of complex epistemic-marking systems higher in the Himalayas and across the Tibetan Plateau has not occurred here, at least not to the same extent (given there are still languages with complex systems such those mentioned above).

## 6.3 Historical contact

### 6.3.1 Introduction

This section will investigate the historical contact across the Himalayas, in particular focussing on the contact between Tibetic-speaking groups and their neighbours. It will assess various groups' historical social, economic, and cultural connections to historical Tibet and non-Trans-Himalayan-speaking groups, and use that to consider any possible sociolinguistic influence. In order to make this a more manageable undertaking, the map is divided into eight regions. These regions are intended to represent various cultural and linguistic macro-areas, though are not particularly academically informed. The regions are as follows:

1. Bhutan, Sikkim
2. Arunachal Pradesh
3. North-East India<sup>1</sup>
4. Central Himalayas, Nepal
5. Western Himalayas
6. Yunnan, Sichuan
7. Northern Flank of Tibet
8. Myanmar

---

<sup>1</sup>I originally had thought to group Bhutan, Arunachal Pradesh, and the rest of North-East India together, however it became clear that the three regions have very different histories in terms of their trade and contact with other groups. These differences will be made clear in their respective sections.

### **6.3.2 Bhutan, Sikkim**

The non-Tibetic languages of Bhutan and Sikkim have been in close contact with Tibetic languages for an extended time period. While it may initially seem clear that, in both having major Tibetic languages spoken in with social prestige throughout the regions,<sup>2</sup> and in the dominance of Tibetan Buddhism in both areas, there has been a great amount of contact and influence from Dzongkha and Denjongke on non-Tibetic languages, it is worth investigating the time-depth of these languages, and the time-frame over which they spread and gained their modern-day influence.

The Tibetic-speaking Bhutanese group, Ngalops, appear to have first arrived in Western Bhutan at some point prior to the ninth century (van Driem 2001), and Tibetan Buddhism began to spread in the region it appears from the construction of the Kyichu and Jampa Lhakhangs in the seventh century (Phuntsho 2014). The precise history of the Tibetic-speakers in Bhutan, however, remains more obscure. In Sikkim, the timing of the arrival of Tibetic-speakers is similarly unclear (van Spengen 2010, Yliniemi 2021), though in both cases it appears that the region was under the rule of the Tibetan Empire during the ninth century (van Schaik 2013). At the very least, it is sufficient to say that there has been a great deal of contact between Tibetic-speaking and non-Tibetic-speaking people throughout the last millennium.

### **6.3.3 Arunachal Pradesh**

In contrast to Bhutan and Sikkim, where Tibetic languages and Tibetan Buddhism are widespread, there appears to have been relatively small amount influence or contact between the majority of the area that today constitutes Arunachal Pradesh<sup>3</sup> and the neighbouring powers of Tibet and the Ahom Kingdom.

Nyori (1993) notes a good trade relationship between some Tani groups and the Ahom Kingdom, particularly in the Kingdom's later years, as well as more substantial contact between the Ahoms and the Mising people, a Tani group who at some point migrated to the lowlands of the Brahmaputra. This contact, at least outside of the Mising people, does not appear to have had any major influence on these groups. Traditional religions have remained widespread and there is no clear linguistic influence from the Tai Ahom language (Mark Post p.c. 2022). Nyori also reports contact between the Tani people from Central Northern Arunachal Pradesh and Tibetic-speakers, both in the form of Tibetans and Khambas and Membas, two smaller Tibetic-speaking groups located around the border region with Tibet. The specific reports referenced by Nyori are all from the last 200 years, however, and it is not clear that there has been any influence from these Tibetic-speaking groups prior to this.

---

<sup>2</sup>Though Denjongke has declined in usage substantially.

<sup>3</sup>Tani-speaking areas as well as a number of smaller subfamilies including Hrushish, Miduish, Digarish, and Kho-Bwa.

An exception to this is the area surrounding Tawang, in the state's north-west. Tibetan Buddhism, and the influences that it carries through the movement of people and goods and the use of Classical Tibetan as an ecclesiastical language, first arrived in the Tawang region (Monyul) in the 11th century (Namgyal 2020). While the language of Tawang, Tawang Monpa (called Dakpa in Bhutan) is East Bodish (Tombleson 2020), it shows a greater amount of influence from Tibetic languages than closely related languages spoken further from the major Tibetan Monastery in Tawang (van Driem 2007a), demonstrating the specifically close connection in the Tawang region to Tibet and the influences a large Tibetan Buddhist presence brings.

Blench (2019) also suggests that the Idu people of the Dibang Valley, in the eastern reaches of Arunachal Pradesh, have historically acted as middlemen for trades between Tibetans to their north-east and the Brahmaputra valley to the south-west. Given the high Kangri Karpo mountains immediately beyond the Dibang Valley, it is not clear which Tibetans they would have been trading with. It is also unclear why this trade would have occurred in the less accessible Dibang Valley as opposed to potentially better connected valleys further west, especially given the Idu people's pride in their reputation as warriors rather than traders (Naomi Peck p.c. 2024). In any case, our knowledge of the exact nature of the relationship that existed between the Idu and Tibetans remains severely limited by the fairly meagre research undertaken and published in the region.

#### **6.3.4 North-East India**

While Arunachal Pradesh is a part of North-East India, culturally and historically, at least in terms of its contact with the wider world, it stands apart from the rest of the region. In purely geographic terms, the Himalayas greatly reduce the possibility of contact between groups, especially when compared to the Brahmaputra valley and modern-day Assam. The Tai origins of the Ahom Kingdom and the physical proximity of modern-day regions like Manipur and Mizoram to non-Tibetic groups has meant that historical connections throughout the rest of North-East India were more directed south-east to Myanmar and the rest of South-East Asia and southern China, or south-west into modern-day Bangladesh and India, rather than north towards Tibet (Gogoi 1968).

#### **6.3.5 Central Himalayas, Nepal**

Unlike further to the east, there is stronger and better established history of Tibetic contact throughout modern-day Nepal and the central Himalayas. van Spengen (2010) reports substantial trade between nomads in Tibet and Indians, passing through Nepal. To this end, Nepali is cited as having developed an evidential system (Bashir 2006), potentially under the influence of neighbouring Trans-Himalayan languages. This survey is lacking data on other Indo-Aryan languages spoken on the southern flank of the ranges, but it seems unlikely that Nepali is alone in this. This

is in part as Nepali is spoken widely in large metropolitan communities rather than smaller, more isolated ones as is the norm for evidentials (Aikhenvald 2004: 359). This is to say that if epistemic marking can develop in Nepali, it is likely to have developed in other languages which closer fit the extra-linguistic profile of languages marking evidentiality and other epistemic categories.

### 6.3.6 Western Himalayas

The Western Himalayan region is, in terms of Trans-Himalayan languages, largely dominated by Tibetic speakers. Aside from this, there are a number of West Himalayish languages, of which two have been surveyed per this thesis' methodology. Both Bunan (Widmer 2020) and Chhitkul-Rakchham (Martinez 2021) show complex epistemic systems, as well as a history of contact with Tibetic speakers through trade between the Indo-Gangetic Plain and Tibet. As with modern-day Nepal, there has, in general, been a large amount of trade and contact in and out of Tibet and with Tibetic-speaking people, though whether or not this is sufficient to claim that one language has influenced the development another is unclear, as will be discussed in Section 6.5.

### 6.3.7 Yunnan, Sichuan

The areas Yunnan and Sichuan have seen a great deal of contact with Tibet and Tibetic speakers in some areas, namely in the northern tip of Yunnan and the western half of Sichuan, while in other areas there appears to have been substantially less. Much of the area of western Sichuan and northern Yunnan was under the control of the Tibetan Empire, and subsequent Tibetan-led states throughout much of the late first and second millenia (van Schaik 2013). The prevalence of Buddhism and spread of the Gelug school has also brought about continued influence from Tibet. Further east and south of this, however, influence from Tibet appears to rapidly diminish. Specifically, these areas in the south-east of Sichuan and the majority of Yunnan that were never under direct control of Tibet and are not majority Buddhist would have had substantially less contact with Tibet or Tibetic speakers. That being said, tea trade from Yunnan to Lhasa and beyond has been documented throughout the second millennium (Sigley 2020). In contemporary terms, trade in the southern parts of Yunnan is directed into South-East Asia rather than to Tibet (Gonzalez-Perez p.c. 2022).

Bradley (2010), focussing on Lisu, provides a fairly recent time-scale for the development of evidentiality in the language. He suggests that the fuller evidential systems seen across a number of the language's varieties could only have developed over the last couple of hundred years, but is only able to reconstruct an ancestral A3 system. A similar conclusion was drawn by Thurgood (1986) for Akha, in that the evidential distinctions have been innovated within the language and not inherited from a higher level ancestor.

### **6.3.8 Northern Flank of Tibet**

The connection between Mongolia and Tibet is well-established, with influences both cultural and linguistic in nature created by the spread of Tibetan Buddhism into Mongolia from the 16th Century (Elverskog 2007). This includes the gradual adoption of Tibetan as a liturgical language even after the spread of the religion to the Mongolian Steppes, a process which Elverskog (2007) suggests was a complex one in which the Mongols were not necessarily entirely willing. While epistemic marking in Mongolic languages (namely Middle Mongol) does appear to predate this arrival of Tibetan Buddhism, and therefore may not be attributable to any influence from Tibet, Mongolic varieties spoken in the southern areas of the range of the family exhibit epistemic systems much closer to those found in Amdo Tibetan varieties (Brosig & Skribnik 2018). In some areas, Amdo Tibetan continues to be used as a lingua franca between Tibetic, Sinitic, Turkic, and Mongolic speakers (Sandman & Simon 2016). In particular, Sandman & Simon (2016) document the clear influence of Amdo Tibetan on the epistemic-marking systems of Wutun (Sinitic) and Salar (Turkic). The clear evidence of the areal diffusion of epistemic marking from Tibetic to other languages on Tibet's northern flank by Brosig & Skribnik (2018) and Sandman & Simon (2016) is a key piece of evidence supporting an argument for a wider influence from Tibetic languages on the epistemic systems of their neighbours. This hypothesis is presented in full in Section 6.4.

### **6.3.9 Myanmar**

As in many of the regions discussed here, Myanmar is overwhelmingly Buddhist. There is clear evidence to date the arrival of Buddhism into the region of modern-day Myanmar to as early as the fourth century, as well as stories of its first arrival 600-700 years earlier (Bretfeld 2019), though there is little empirical evidence to support these latter claims. However, Buddhism in Myanmar is of the Theravada school, rather than the Vajrayana school found in Tibet and Mongolia. As such, despite the shared religion at a higher level, the implication of social or political contact through shared religion in other areas bordering Tibet does not exist here. Trade routes, in particular the Tea Horse Road (Sigley 2020) saw trade from Yunnan through to India via either Myanmar or Lhasa, though it is not clear that there would have been any direct trade between the two. In sum, while neither Tibet nor Myanmar were by any mean isolated from their surroundings, there does not appear to have been any significant connections in social or political terms that may bring about any substantial areal linguistic influence.

## 6.4 Map patterns in social historical context

### 6.4.1 Hypothesis 1: Tibetic contact and epistemic marking

When initially considering the map (Figure 6.1), it is clear that there are more languages with epistemic marking closer to the Tibetic-speaking area. As demonstrated in the above analysis of historical population contact, with some notable exceptions, it appears that areas with epistemic marking in close proximity with Tibetic speakers also have a history of contact with these Tibetic speakers, either through trade, religion, or political control. This suggests initially that Tibetic languages have facilitated the spread of epistemic marking across the Himalayas.

There are a number of possibilities here. It is plausible that the complex epistemic marking seen across the Himalayas first originated in an early Tibetic proto-language and have been inherited into the subfamily and spreading areally to its neighbours. However, given a full epistemic or evidential system has not been identified in Old Tibetan, and that certain evidential forms in Classical Tibetan literature did not appear to have that function in Old Tibetan (Hill 2014) it seems more likely that the widespread epistemic marking within the Tibetic subfamily is itself an areal feature, having either been innovated by a single variety within the subfamily or borrowed in from a neighbouring language. Further, while recent research does show a fairly developed grammaticalised epistemic system in Middle Classical Tibetan (c.15th century) (Oisel 2024), the system is not clearly formally shared with any modern descendants. Indeed, some of the languages with complex epistemic-marking systems discussed in this thesis (see Sections 7.3.3.1 and 7.3.3.2) branched off earlier than the development of the epistemic system in Middle Classical Tibetan (Bialek 2018). By this possibility, the spread of Tibetic languages and the political and religious prestige the languages have historically held across the Himalayas have allowed them to facilitate the spread of epistemic marking that was either borrowed into the family or that spread areally within the family rather than being inherited from a proto-Tibetic language.

Outside of the Tibetic family and closely related language groups, there is very little in the way of shared forms. That is, unlike with some grammatical marking (the *\*ma-* negative prefix) and vocabulary (*\*s-ŋya* ‘fish’ (Matisoff 2015)), it is not possible to find any common ancestor or identify any specific forms that have been borrowed between languages. This does not come as a surprise, however, as areal spread of evidentiality and epistemic marking typologically tends to show borrowing of function rather than form (Aikhenvald 2004). That is, when a language community is exposed to a neighbouring language with epistemic marking, it is typologically more common for them to take the function of the marking and innovate forms within the language, rather than borrow the exact forms from the donor language. As such, this lack of shared forms is exactly what we would expect to see from a situation whereby epistemic marking has spread areally or horizontally rather than through inheritance or vertically.

As discussed in Section 6.3.8, not only is it certainly possible that Tibetic languages could have had such an influence on neighbouring languages, but it has been explicitly documented. While the influence on Mongolic languages noted by Brosig & Skribnik (2018) appears to have brought about the replacement or modification of an existing epistemic system, in the Sinitic language Wutun, the Tibetic-influenced epistemic marking does not appear to have an indigenous precursor. Other Sinitic languages in the sample do not have any grammaticalised epistemic-marking systems. With this, it is rather the equivalency of linguistic and social factors between this example and other possible cases of Tibetic influence that become key to answering the question of whether or not this process could have occurred more widely, and more historically. These factors are discussed in detail in Section 6.5.

#### **6.4.2 Hypothesis 2: Non-Trans-Himalayan contact and lack of epistemic marking**

A number of the points addressed above can be alternatively explained by taking a somewhat inverted view of the patterns visible in the map. That is, what if instead of epistemic marking being gained in proximity to Tibetic languages, it has widely been lost in contact with languages outside the Trans-Himalayan family? This hypothesis explains the general patterns to the same extent as the first, but additionally addresses some of the outliers or areas that do not fit Hypothesis 1, namely in the non-Tibetic-speaking areas of Arunachal Pradesh, where, as discussed in Section 6.3.3, there has been limited contact with Tibet but there is still complex epistemic marking. The rest of these cases are discussed individually in Section 6.4.3.

The hypothesis that these epistemic systems descend from a common ancestor does not, at least on the surface, account for the lack of shared forms between languages in the same way that the areal influence hypothesis does.

A similar lack of cognacy was identified in egophorics in the Barbacoan language family by Norcliffe (2018), who, with reference to similar documented processes in other functional domains, suggests that this is the result of a tendency to repeatedly renovate forms. That is, while the function is maintained in a grammar, the form themselves have been regrammaticalised repeatedly throughout the language's development, resulting in egophoric systems with similar functional loads but no clear cognate forms between otherwise related languages.

Seeing that this has been documented for epistemic forms elsewhere, it is reasonable to assume this regular renovation of forms could be occurring in the Trans-Himalayan family, providing an explanation for the lack of cognacy between forms identified in the survey. Hyslop (2020) in fact reports exactly this for mirative marking in Kurtöp, noting that the forms seem to be recent grammaticalisations, and that while mirative marking is widespread throughout the languages of Bhutan, many languages have idiosyncratic forms and strategies for marking it.

### 6.4.3 Outliers

This section will briefly discuss the languages that do not follow the overall pattern, namely areas with complex epistemic systems surrounded by languages without.

#### 6.4.3.1 Hyow, Daai Chin

Hyow (Zakaria 2018) and Daai Chin (So-Hartmann 2009) are both Kukish languages of the Southern branch, spoken in the southern Chin Hills of western Myanmar. While the languages are, at least from a phylogenetic point of view, fairly closely related, the evidential systems in the languages do not appear to be cognate. The evidential system in Hyow (Kukish: Myanmar, Zakaria 2018: 486) comprises two enclitics, marking sensory and reportative evidence. The sensory evidential form *=nú* can be attached to both verbal phrases, where it carries the sensory evidential meaning along with a strong emphatic meaning, as well as on noun phrases, where it carries only the emphatic meaning. The sensory meaning here appears very broad, in that it also appears to cover conclusions drawn through inference and through personal experience. An example of the egophoric function is given in (29), in which the speakers (quoted) make a judgement on something being good based on their personal experience in life rather than some immediately visible source of information.

- (29) *bóhítṣâ èyhú?y néménâ?yhyótsâ pôhyónú*.  
bóhí=tsâ èyhú?y né-mêy-ná-â?y-hyâ=tsâ pôy-hyâ=nú  
so=TOP like.that 2s-stay-SPNT-FUT-PM=TOP be.good-PM=ss.EVID  
'They said, "So, it is good that you will stay without any hesitation like that." ' Hyow  
(Kukish: Myanmar, Zakaria 2018: 487)

The reportative clitic *=tî* is a transparent grammaticalisation of the rarely used verb *tî* 'be told' and is primarily used in folk tales. In folk tales, it appears to refer to the oral history nature of the tales, as they are series of events that any given speaker would themselves have been told initially. The clitic is also contrasted with a direct speech quotative particle *tîng*. There are also a small number of other forms in Hyow that may be epistemic in nature. Specifically, it features a verbal suffix that could be mirative or counterexpective (Zakaria 2018: 440), and a suffix marking unexpectedness (p. 437). Given the two clearly epistemic clitics fill the same grammatical slot (though a slot shared with many other clitics), the system has been categorised as paradigmatic in this analysis.

Daai Chin (Kukish: Myanmar, So-Hartmann 2009: 294) has a more extensive epistemic-marking system, and one which is almost archetypally scattered. Daai Chin marks three evidential bases, direct experience, inference, and hearsay. All of these forms can be marked with particles, though these particles fill different slots in the sentence. That is, while the direct particle *vanikba* (itself a portmanteau of three other forms) and inferential particle *lek* occur after the non-future clitic *=kti*, the hearsay occurs before. Additionally, the direct experience particle can

be replaced by the clitic *=kba*, itself the third constituent component of the full particle *vanikba*. Daai Chin also has a clear mirative form, a verbal suffix *-in*, which marks given information as both surprising and bad. According to the description by So-Hartmann (2009: 293), this mirative meaning can have both an addressee and character origo, as seen in (30). Here, the event is construed as either neutral (perhaps the knife was already damaged or not of use to its owner) or as an unexpected and unfortunate discovery.

- (30) a. *Thang=noch kah ksi:m ah kpyak.*  
Thang=ERG POSS:1s knife S.AGR:3s destroy  
'Thang broke my knife.'
- b. *Thang=noch kah ksi:m ah kpyak-in.*  
Thang=ERG POSS:1s knife S.AGR:3s destroy-MIR  
'Thang broke my knife.'

Daai Chin (Kukish: Myanmar, So-Hartmann 2009: 294)

These epistemic systems in Hyow and Daai Chin are both formally and functionally distinct. As such, whether or not they are related or are coincidental parallel innovations is impossible to confidently say at this stage, at least within the scope of this project.

#### 6.4.3.2 Meithei

The epistemic system in Meithei (Internal isolate: India, S. L. Chelliah 1997) has been discussed already in other sections of this thesis, namely in Section 5.2.2.2 and 7.4.2. The language has another clear example of a scattered epistemic system, with functions marked via nominalisers, complementisers, and both derivational and inflectional suffixes. This widespread scattering is not unique to the epistemic systems of Trans-Himalayan languages, but it does appear to be on the upper end of the scattered-paradigmatic scale. The language itself is the official language of Manipur State, India, and is spoken in and around the capital city of Imphal. As will be discussed in Section 6.5.3, epistemic marking is more commonly seen in smaller communities, and its presence specifically in Meithei seems unexpected. What is not visible from the map presented in this chapter, however, is whether any of the languages spoken directly adjacent to Meithei in Manipur have similarly complex epistemic marking, as the survey did not have the capacity to assess every possible language in the region. That said, the languages of Inpui, Zeme (both Zeme subfamily Devi 2014, Chanu 2017), and Karbi (Karbic Konnerth 2020) do not appear to show any epistemic marking. The separation of Meithei speakers from Tibet, and the languages either showing single term epistemic systems or lacking them entirely situated between the two regions, suggests that this epistemic system cannot be a result of areal diffusion from Tibet, but must have either been inherited or separately innovated, and was not lost as the speakers of the languages became metropolitan. These questions, as with many, remain unanswered.

## 6.5 Further contributing factors

This section will discuss four further factors that likely contribute to the development of epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan family. If we had a strong picture of the actual historical situation regarding them, these factors would likely be able to lend support to one of the above hypotheses. However, these factors are, in many ways, unanswered questions, and as such, it is difficult if not impossible to clearly establish if one hypothesis is more likely than another.

### 6.5.1 Time scale

Given the historical factors that appear to have influenced the development and spread of epistemic marking across the Himalayas, knowledge of the time scale or time depth to which forms can be reconstructed in single languages or language groups would confirm whether or not areal influence or inheritance could have occurred in a given period. That is, if evidential forms could be reconstructed to a time depth older than the spread of the Tibetan Empire, it would be clear that the Tibetan Empire could not have had any influence. Similarly, if it was demonstrably the case that a language only first developed epistemic marking concurrently to a historical factor discussed above, then it would seem more plausible that those might be connected. Due to the regular renovation of forms discussed above, however, this is not possible. While it may be theoretically possible to find a language or language group where the time depth of a specific form can be clearly ascertained, it is much harder to prove that that form was the first form present in the language, rather than a new form replacing a previous one. Similarly, because of this constant renovation, as will be discussed in Section 6.5.4, cognate forms do not survive long enough for reconstruction of old enough parent forms to clearly place the development of systems in any historical context. Together, this means that it is difficult, if not impossible (at least with the current knowledge of and data available on Trans-Himalayan languages), to date the development of evidential systems in the Himalayas with any accuracy.

### 6.5.2 Multilingualism

In order for these suggested processes of language change due to areal influence from neighbouring languages to have actually occurred, there needs to have been a high level of multilingualism between the two languages at hand within their relevant communities. More specifically, the proposal that the spread and influence of Tibetic languages under the Tibetic Empire facilitated this large-scale areal spread of epistemic marking across the Himalayas requires that there were members of the non-Tibetic-speaking communities with a high enough level of proficiency in a Tibetic or other epistemic-marking languages to comfortably and confidently use the epistemic forms. Moreover, it necessitated that the density of these multilingual community members was high enough for a local innovation of an epistemic system to actually enter common usage and

survive within the recipient language. Unfortunately, it is not yet particularly clear what this necessary density would actually have been. Moreover, it is not clear, historically speaking, how widespread this multilingualism was across the Himalayas. In Section 6.3 above, connections are largely presented through trade, politics, and religion. While it is not unlikely that higher levels of Tibetic proficiency in a community can be expected in Tibetan Buddhist communities, this assumption is substantially less stable in cases of political influence, or especially trade contact, and is likely to be very situationally dependent. As such, data on the level of multilingualism between Tibetic languages and non-Tibetic languages throughout the last millennium would likely shed substantial clarity on the possibilities surrounding not only the development of epistemic marking, but also the areal spread of linguistic features and diachronic development of the Trans-Himalayan family more widely. It is, however, incredibly unlikely, if not outright impossible, that we will be able to ascertain this in great enough detail across the whole region.

### 6.5.3 Community size

There is a negative correlation between the presence of evidentiality in a language community and that community's size. That is, evidentiality is more commonly seen in smaller communities (Aikhenvald 2004: 359). Aikhenvald suggests, noncommittally, that such a trend perhaps is attributable to a social pressure in communities where all speakers know all other speakers to avoid negatively perceived gossip. Whether or not this is true, the prevalence of epistemic marking diffusing areally certainly seems to suggest some pressure favouring its adoption. This pressure appears, for some reason, stronger in smaller communities. Alternatively to Aikhenvald's pondering, perhaps it is not that there is an increased social pressure to explicitly or grammatically mark epistemic information, but rather a greater ability for the feature to spread throughout a language community from a smaller number of source speakers. This propensity for epistemic marking to occur in smaller language communities is not unique. Rather, languages spoken by smaller communities are overall more likely to show grammaticalised forms for functions covered lexically in languages spoken by larger communities (Lupyan & Dale 2010). Perhaps independent of the actual functional benefit to epistemic marking (if any), if there are only a few hundred speakers of a language variety, all of whom are in regular contact with each other, a linguistic innovation will presumably more readily spread across the whole community and become standard. In a much larger metropolitan community, where many speakers never have any contact with some others, changes can of course still spread, but would do so much less readily as the density of speakers introducing the new function would be much lower if there were overall many more speakers.

There is perhaps also a functional pressure in the opposite direction. If grammaticalised epistemic marking is more commonly seen in small language communities, rather than attributing its acquisition or development to some feature of these small communities, we could consider

pressures in large language communities to lose such a system. Wray & Grace (2007) note that languages with greater numbers of speakers are more commonly used as platforms for communication between groups that would not otherwise speak the same language. That is, they are more commonly used as lingua francas, either at a very large scale (as can be widely seen throughout the world with languages such as English and Hindi), or at a smaller scale, such as with the Lhokpu communities in south-western Bhutan, where all (or at least the vast majority) of the community members are proficient in both Lhokpu and Nepali, the language spoken in all surrounding villages.

These two sizes of community and types of communication can be described as EXOTERIC and ESOTERIC. These terms originate from Thurston (1989), and refer respectively to language communication in which speakers regularly interact with community outsiders and strangers (that is, L2 speakers, or even just speakers outside their circle of familiarity), and communication in smaller communities where speakers only regularly communicate with people with whom they are familiar. If, as is reported by Lupyan & Dale (2010), languages spoken in exoteric settings tend to have a lower level of morphological complexity owing to the wider range of speakers and higher level of interaction with strangers, then it follows that the tendency for grammaticalised epistemic marking to occur more commonly in smaller language communities can in part be attributed to this far more general trend.

Both of these possible external pressures (that is, some social pressure pushing small communities to mark epistemics grammatically or some other pressure to loose said marking in large language communities) agree with the actual data presented in a synchronic sense, but the diachronic development of systems could be informed by a greater awareness of population levels and the social dynamics surrounding language use in multilingual environments historically speaking. With the current state of research however, and likely moving forward, there is no clear and feasible pathway to gain this data.

#### 6.5.4 Shared forms

The core of historical linguistics is the comparative method, and the core of the comparative method is cognacy (Hyslop & d'Alpoim-Guedes 2020). Other shared typological features or functional distinctions do not provide a sufficient evidence base for the development of concrete claims in historical linguistics. Other methodologies, namely the Bayesian analyses discussed at length in Section 3.3.5, do not, at least at this stage, appear to be capable of producing any stronger results than the comparative method (Dolin 2022). With this in mind, a clear and provable conclusion regarding the exact process by which epistemic marking came to be so widespread across the Himalayas, and whether or not either of the hypotheses presented above in Section 6.4 are in fact accurate, would be difficult to achieve without clear reconstructions of forms using the comparative method and subsequent confirmed phylogenies of said epistemic markers. As is something

of a trend with this factors, this information appears to be inaccessible. There are two primary factors confounding the use of the comparative method, or more generally any higher level comparison of epistemic systems based on forms: a tendency for borrowed epistemics to borrow only function and not form, and an apparent tendency for epistemic forms to be regularly renovated and regrammaticalised within a language.

The former factor—the tendency for epistemic forms to be borrowed in function only—is noted for evidentiality by Aikhenvald (2004: 294), who explains that this “indirect diffusion” is more common than “direct diffusion”. These functional borrowings are visible in a number of areas. The Amdo Tibetan epistemic sprachbund, specifically the spread of epistemic marking from Amdo Tibetan to Wutun (Sinitic), Salar (Turkic), and some Mongolic varieties has already been discussed in Section 6.3.8. In all of these cases, forms have not been directly borrowed from Amdo Tibetan, but have developed within the language under the functional influence of a neighbouring language. Some other cases of this, namely in varieties of Munya (Qiangic) and West Himalayish languages will be discussed in Section 6.6.1. The regularity with which this indirect diffusion is observed, including in documented cases in the Himalayas lead to the conclusion that direct diffusion cannot be expected. More specifically, a lack of direct diffusion cannot be taken as evidence against diffusion in general. If two neighbouring languages both have epistemic systems that are functionally similar but formally totally different, it is possible, if not likely, that there has been some areal diffusion of the systems between the languages. This also means that there are less cognate forms or immediately visible borrowings, confounding our ability to reconstruct any historical forms.

The latter factor, that epistemic forms appear to be relatively regularly renovated or regrammaticalised, is less documented. Hyslop (2020) specifically notes this in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan), where it appears that the mirative markers are recent grammaticalisations given their lexical status in the closely related Bumthap language. That is, they must have grammaticalised after the split between the languages. Conversely, the prevalence of mirative marking in the region suggests that there may have been previous mirative forms inherited from a shared ancestor. Across the dataset, I have been unable to find any reconstruction of epistemic systems to any deep time depth, a number specifically reporting an inability to do so, or with a clear, recent etymology for a given form (Thurgood 1986).

The result is that epistemic forms cannot ever be expected to share forms; in fact shared forms would be a noteworthy and unusual occurrence. Tibetic languages themselves also seem to present a further example of this, whether or not they have acted as conduits for the spread of epistemic marking. While epistemic marking is almost omnipresent across the subfamily, in particular in the copula systems of the various varieties, there is very little in the way of shared forms aside from a small number of inherited copulas that potentially did not have epistemic meaning in the shared parent language (Hill & Gawne 2017, Zeisler 2018b, Zemp 2020). Zemp

(2020) argues for a pathway of development for these systems whereby previously epistemically neutral copulas are counterposed against newly grammaticalised epistemically marked ones. This pathway appears to hold fairly widely across the family, notably including varieties with no areal contact such as the Western Tibetic varieties described by Zemp and southern varieties such as Chocangaca (Tibetic: Bhutan, Bodnaruk 2023a). This widely shared grammaticalisation pathway, and the general lack of shared forms for the more recently developed epistemically marked copulas, is difficult to explain. How is it possible that so many Tibetic varieties have undergone what appears to be a very similar process of developing epistemic marking in their copula systems, but have arrived at different formal conclusions in so many cases. It is possible that these newer secondary copulas are not the first epistemically marked copulas to have developed, and have all replaced a shared earlier form. It is similarly possible that these are in fact the first epistemic forms to have developed, but that some other factor such as widespread areal “indirect” diffusion, occurring internally within the Tibetic subfamily, has caused the various Tibetic varieties to innovate their own forms through a shared process. As has become a theme in this section, there is not enough evidence to truly explain this at the current stage. More generally, because of the lack of shared forms in any situation in epistemic systems, it is very difficult to trace the history of epistemic forms, as they appear to tend much younger formally than they do functionally.

## 6.6 Case studies

The scale of this project and the number of languages it has surveyed means that it is not possible to directly address each one independently. Rather, this section will provide a number of small case studies of languages or regions that are of particular relevance to the hypotheses presented above. Specifically, it will address a number of cases where there appears to be more clear influence from Tibetic languages on neighbouring languages, as well as two topics of note. These are the languages of Arunachal Pradesh, which appear to almost uniquely show epistemic marking without contact with Tibetic languages, and a brief extension of this investigation into Indo-Aryan languages to consider an alternative hypothesis that these languages may have also acted as a source of epistemic marking, a phenomenon documented in a number of cases.

### 6.6.1 Tibetic influence

There are a number of cases of apparent synchronic influence from Tibetic languages. Of these, the development of Tibetic-like evidential systems in languages in contact with Amdo Tibetan documented by Sandman & Simon (2016) and Brosig & Skribnik (2018) has been discussed in Section 6.3.8. Two other cases will be discussed below, including varieties of Munya, spoken in Sichuan Province in China, and in West Himalayish languages spoken in north-western India.

### 6.6.1.1 Munya

Western Munya (Qiangic: PRC) shows a system of epistemic marking with similar bases to systems seen in Tibetic languages such as Lhasa Tibetan; namely, a three-way distinction between direct or visual evidence, indirect (inferential or reportative evidence), or egophoric. Examples are given of these forms in Western Munya in (31), in which the evidential forms are the clause-final particles *ra*, *sə*, and *yo* respectively.

- (31) a. Visual

*ró tέ-ze tʰó-sə ra*  
snake one-CLF:LONG AS-die EVID:DIRECT  
'The snake died.' (watching the snake die)

- b. Inferential

*ró tέ-ze tʰó-sə sə*  
snake one-CLF:LONG AS-die PFV  
'The snake died.' (indirect evidence, seeing a dead snake)

- c. Egophoric

*ŋúa ndő yo*  
1SG go/1SG EGO:SAP  
'I'm leaving.'

Western Munya (Qiangic: PRC, Bai 2019: 241, 247)

Given the tendency for epistemic systems to be borrowed for function rather than form, there is a distinct possibility that this system has developed under influence from Tibet and Tibetic languages. Notably, this similarity does not extend to the closely related Eastern Munya, a fact pointed out to me by Agnes Conrad (p.c. 2022). Eastern Munya (alternatively spelled Minyag by Conrad) does have a complex system of epistemic marking, though it does not functionally mirror the system in Lhasa Tibetan in the way that Western Munya does. Bai (2019) notes that while the Western Munya area predominantly follows the Gelug school of Tibetan Buddhism, politically dominant in Tibet, research from (J. Li 2006) suggests that the Eastern Munya areas predominantly follow the Nyingma school, as well as the indigenous Bon religion. This is in addition to other practices that align more closely with Qiangic-speaking groups than Tibetic groups but which are absent in Western Munya communities.<sup>4</sup> This seems to support the hypothesis that this similarity in the Western Munya and Tibetic systems is not coincidental, but the effect of more extensive contact between Tibet and the Western Munya speakers than was experienced by Eastern Munya speakers, causing the Western Munya speakers to develop an epistemic system which functionally mirrors Tibetic languages. The presence of a different system in Eastern Munya does suggest the Tibetic-like system presented in (31) replaced a native system, which has been retained in the Eastern varieties. This case study does not particularly lean in favour of either of the two hypotheses presented in Section 6.4, but rather suggests a mix of the two. Tibetic varieties have

<sup>4</sup>This observation was first pointed out to my by Agnes Conrad based on her own experience in both communities.

evidently had significant influence on surrounding languages (and potentially at a fairly recent timescale of around 400 years (Conrad p.c. 2024)), seemingly overlaying an inherited system of unclear origin.

Further analysis of these systems, and a consideration as to whether or not this seemingly inherited system present in Eastern Munya is descended from an earlier ancestor, has developed under influence from Tibet, or has developed on its own, is not yet possible due to the lack of published literature on Eastern Munya at the time of writing.

#### 6.6.1.2 West Himalayish

Widmer (2017) suggests a possibility that the epistemic system in Bunan (West Himalayish: India) may have developed under influence from Tibetic speakers to the north. Specifically, he establishes pathways for the development of the forms of the evidential markers in the language in the form of reanalyses of existent grammatical constructions to hold epistemic meaning. Widmer notes that similar pathways have been attested in neighbouring Western Tibetic languages, with which Bunan has had a large amount of contact, and suggests that this contact have caused these reanalyses in Bunan. The other West Himalayish language in the sample, Chhitkul-Rakchham (West Himalayish: India, Martinez 2021) also marks epistemic meaning grammatically. However, the systems in these two languages do not appear to be cognate, suggesting they have either both developed independently following the divergence of the West Himalayish subfamily, or that one of the two has inherited a native West Himalayish epistemic-marking system and the other has more recently innovated a new one. On considering possible origins for epistemic forms in Chhitkul-Rakchham and related languages such as Kinnauri, Martinez (2021: 316) suggests that epistemic marking in Chhitkul-Rakchham is in fact not a particularly recent development. This would point towards the latter proposal given above: that Chhitkul-Rakchham has perhaps inherited an older epistemic system of some form, while Bunan has renovated any inherited system it may have had, potentially under influence from Tibetic languages. This would make this situation somewhat comparable to the situation in Munya discussed in Section 6.6.1.1, though, unlike the two Munya varieties, there are other West Himalayish languages which, while being considered in the source material used here (Widmer 2014, 2017, Martinez 2021), have not been specifically surveyed as part of this project. As in all cases, research is in a preliminary stage on these developments, and it is entirely possible that the historical information necessary to inarguably prove the development of these systems in any form may well be nonexistent.

#### 6.6.2 Arunachal Pradesh

The Tani languages of Arunachal Pradesh appear to have complex epistemic systems with limited institutional or trade contact with Tibet (Mark Post p.c. 2022). As discussed in Section 6.3.3, the influences of Tibetan Buddhism have not spread further than Tawang in the far north-west

of Arunachal Pradesh, and generally along the border with Bhutan (Namgyal 2020). Similarly, trade contact appears to have been oriented south, with the Ahom Kingdom and Tai people (Nyori 1993). This suggests, then, that the epistemic systems in this region are either inherited from a common ancestor (the time depth of which is unclear), or have developed from a more recent independent innovation and spread throughout the region. This is perhaps the strongest argument against the hypothesis that Tibetic languages and their sociocultural and political status, as well as their geographic spread after the rise of the Tibetan Empire, are responsible for the widespread epistemic marking across the Himalayas. It is also worth noting the highly divergent forms of the epistemic-marking systems in the region. In particular, in Milang (Siangic, Modi 2017), all unmarked statements are egophoric and must be actively neutralised through the use of nominalisers when statements cannot functionally be marked as egophoric. This is drastically different from the more direct paradigmatic marking systems seen in Tibetic languages, and it is difficult to conceptualise how such systems may be directly related through borrowing. At the same time, it is difficult to conceptualise a shared ancestor between the two at any time depth, though in neither case is this enough to truly say that neither is possible.

Tani languages appear, however, to have more standard paradigmatic systems of epistemic marking. Galo marks a fairly archetypal egophoric distinction in the direct perfective, contrasting the egophoric *-tó* with the alterphoric *-gée*, given in (32). Post (2013) notes, however, that this construction is not common in the variety of Galo being described, and that another domain of the grammar where this egophoric contrast is marked may be in the process of losing this contrast altogether. As discussed in Section 5.2.3.2, this egophoric contrast in Galo is not informed at all by speaker volition. Unlike in other varieties such as some Tibetic languages—in which actions completed by the speaker without their volition, or states of being experienced by the speaker similarly without volition would not be marked with the highest speaker-authority form—in Galo they are. There is an argument to be made, considering this fact and the fact that it is so restricted in its domains of use, that this contrast is, at least in the current day, not as functionally productive as systems seen in other areas of the Himalayas. Whether this suggests a borrowed system or an inherited system is, however, not clear.

(32) a. Egophoric declarative

<i>nó</i>	<i>'acín</i>	<i>dót</i>	<i>bá</i>
<i>nó</i>	<i>'acín</i>	<i>dó-tó-bá</i>	
1.SG cooked.rice eat-EGO-PFV:DIR			
'I've just had my meal (I know, because I experienced it)'			

b. Alterphoric declarative

<i>nó</i>	<i>'acín</i>	<i>dogée</i>	<i>bá</i>
<i>nó</i>	<i>'acín</i>	<i>dó-gée-bá</i>	
2.SG cooked.rice eat-ALTER-PFV:DIR			
'You had your meal (I have seen you doing it)'			

c. Egophoric interrogative

nó    'acín        dót                  barèe

ŋó    'acín        dó-tó-bá=rèe

2.SG cooked.rice eat-EGO-PFV:DIR=PQ

'Have you had your meal (I believe you must know, because you would have experienced it)?'

Galo (Tani: India, Post 2013: 114)

### 6.6.3 Evidential developments in Indo-Aryan languages

In a small number of cases, epistemic forms in Trans-Himalayan languages can be traced to borrowing from Indo-Aryan languages, namely Nepali. In particular, Dura (Internal Isolate: Nepal, Schorer 2016: 279) and Yakkha (Kiranti: Nepal, Schackow 2015: 520) both have mirative forms borrowed from Nepali *ra* and *rahecha* respectively. Both languages, spoken in Nepal, have seen large amounts of contact with Nepali as a lingua franca and language of the government. This poses a question as to whether or not this influence from Indo-Aryan languages is widespread, creating a potential third hypothesis as to the origin or conduit of epistemic marking in the Himalayas. That is, could Indo-Aryan languages more generally be a source of this marking?

The answer to this appears to be no. Epistemic marking has not been widely or saliently documented in Indo-Aryan languages. Specifically, it has been noted in Nepali (Bashir 2006), though I could not find any other clear description of grammaticalised epistemic marking in other Indo-Aryan languages. Given its proximity to numerous Trans-Himalayan languages in its position in the Himalayas, it is perhaps more likely that the presence of epistemic marking is itself attributable to contact with epistemic-marking Trans-Himalayan languages, forms of which have then much more recently been reborrowed into Dura and Yakkha. These borrowings are a rare example of mirative forms being directly borrowed, as opposed to the more common borrowing of functions discussed in Section 6.5.4 and exemplified in Western Munya in Section 6.6.1.1. Assuming these forms are liable for regular (at a generational timescale) renovation and reanalysis, these borrowings can be assumed to be fairly recent. They perhaps represent a stage in the spread of epistemics that is not widely present elsewhere in the current day, or that did not necessarily occur.

### 6.6.4 Lisu

Not included in the sample are the Lisu varieties, which have been specifically examined for their epistemic marking systems by Bradley (2010), as discussed in Section 6.3.7. In examining three Lisu varieties in detail, Bradley is able to both account for the development of the systems within the Lisu group, as well as separate the development of epistemic marking in Lisu from more closely related languages with epistemic marking such as Akha, described by Thurgood (1986). Specifically, Bradley dates the development of epistemic (specifically evidential) marking

to having occurred within the last few hundred years, a similar time frame to the divergence of the Lisu varieties. While on the surface this certainly seems to suggest that the evidential marking was newly innovated within Lisu, it is similarly possible that either the system first developed and spread throughout Lisu speakers through areal diffusion under influence from an outside language. It is plausible that, given the lack of shared forms in any situation across the family as discussed in Section 6.5.4, the system described today is a renovation of a previous system inherited from a parent language. Both of these possibilities suggest that either one of the hypotheses presented in this chapter remain as a possible explanation for the development of epistemic marking in Lisu.

## 6.7 Conclusion

This chapter has begun to answer the question of the origin of the widespread epistemic marking in the Himalayan region, in particular in the Trans-Himalayan family. Specifically, it has proposed two possible hypothesis: that the widespread presence of grammatically marked epistemic meaning is a result of areal diffusion brought about by the spread and influence of the Tibetan Empire and Tibetic languages on much of the Himalayan region, or that the epistemic marking is an inherited or much older trait shared across the Trans-Himalayan family which has been lost in contact with non-Trans-Himalayan languages. Ultimately, however, it concluded that there is insufficient knowledge in the academic sphere to gain sufficient support for either one of these hypotheses, and it is not clear that sufficient evidence will ever be available, as much of what would be required is historical insight lost to time. This conclusion has been reached by grouping epistemic systems by some formal features, namely by the size-focussed typology outlined in Section 5.2.2.1, specifically into a schema as follows:

- Complex Epistemic Systems
  - Paradigmatic
  - Scattered
- Single Term Systems
  - A3 Systems
  - Other Systems
- No Epistemic Marking

Languages were subjectively sorted into this schema based on existing description and analysis, the full details of which are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 and Appendix B. In practice, it became apparent that these categorisations of systems, in particular the Paradigmatic/Scattered

distinction, are not entirely binary. Rather, in some cases they are not entirely clear cut or are more scalar. That is to say that a given system can be *more* paradigmatic or scattered than another, even if both tend towards a given end of this spectrum. Data from this schema were then plotted on a map to illustrate any potential patterns and trends in the geographical distribution of categorised systems. The immediate pattern visible is a tendency for languages with epistemic systems, in particular complex ones, to occur in closer geographical proximity with Tibetic languages, while languages further away tended (though not universally) to lack such marking, or to have single term systems marking only hearsay evidence.

The confidence of these results and the hypotheses that can be drawn from them are, however, greatly confounded by a lack of historical information. While the historical contact of the speaking groups in the regions surrounding the Tibetic-speaking area can be assessed in broad terms, as was done in Section 6.3, issues discussed in Section 6.5 regarding a lack of understanding of historical details such as the time depth of forms, the levels of multilingualism in communities and the sizes of said communities, and the lack of shared forms when assessing epistemic marking sprachbunds greatly confound our ability in the present to confidently support either hypothesis, or any other. Some specific case studies that provide interesting insights into the hypotheses presented in real terms were presented in Section 6.6. These case studies included instances where influence from Tibetic languages has been specifically described, showing that it is certainly possible, though at a much smaller scale than what is being suggested by the hypothesis of Tibetic as a conduit for areal diffusion of epistemic marking. Additionally, in the case of the Munya varieties, it appears possible that the Tibetic-like system in Western Munya replaced an earlier native system which remains in Eastern Munya, suggesting that this particular case of diffusion from Tibetic languages is, at the very least, not contemporaneous with the proposed mass diffusion. Challenges in reconstructing historical contact with Tibetic speakers are also noted in the specific discussion of the languages of Arunachal Pradesh, where there seem to have been conflicting reports about the level of contact that has been seen and the nature thereof, particularly in the face of particular challenges in terrain. As a result of these observations, it seems likely that a combination of inheritance and areal diffusion has brought about the current widespread and incredibly varied epistemic marking across the Himalayas, and that our lack of insights into the historical cultural and linguistic situations across the region and Trans-Himalayan family mean that at this stage, any clearer conclusions are not possible.

# Chapter 7

## Discussion

### 7.1 Introduction

#### 7.1.1 Chapter overview

Having presented an overview of the trends seen in epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages in Chapter 5, this chapter takes these typological observations and attempts to draw some conclusions on more theoretical terms about the nature of epistemic marking in the family and beyond. It does so with the specific goal of supporting the core argument of this thesis, that epistemic marking exists as a single theoretical category with a coherent functional domain establishing shared epistemic ground between speech act participants, and that this singular theoretical category can be supported by linguistic evidence from natural languages. Further, it suggests that functions within this combined category additionally share a common functional motivation for their development and sustained use. This will be argued in terms of two features of some epistemic systems in the survey: mixed systems, in which functions from across multiple traditional cross-linguistic categories are marked within a single system, and cases where the use of epistemic marking is explicitly conditioned by social factors.

Mixed systems, identified in 5.2.3.1 as a subset of complex systems in which the multiple epistemic bases do not all belong to the same traditional cross-linguistic functional category, are discussed in Section 7.2, with a detailed overview of the theoretical foundations of the analysis presented in Section 7.2.1. The implications of these mixed systems on paradigmatic systems and scattered systems are discussed in Sections 2.5.1 and 2.5.1.1 respectively, with a more detailed definition of the term paradigmatic given in the former. Finally, the mixed systems identified in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan) and Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC) are presented as detailed case studies on how the theoretical conclusions drawn, namely that a speaker is attentive to all possible epistemic bases and speech act participant perspectives in any given speech act, are reflected in actual attested data.

Section 7.3 provides a similar discussion of the extension of epistemic meaning to the reflection of social structures and interpersonal relationships, rather than the relationship between the origo and a piece of knowledge. A number of challenges in the analysis of social conditions are presented in Section 7.3.2, followed by case studies of actual data from three languages or language groups in which social factors have been described as influencing the use of epistemic marking: a number of varieties of Amdo Tibetan (Tibetic: PRC), and Ladakhi (Tibetic: India). Additionally, data from the highly divergent Milang (Siangic: India) are discussed in terms of the inverse, that is the effects of epistemic marking on social expectations and norms.

Next, Section 7.4 considers frameworks and tools for the analysis of perspective and intersubjectivity in terms of the data collected on Trans-Himalayan languages. Specifically, it considers the theoretical tool of the origo and its usefulness in the various situations identified in the data and discussed in the case studies in Sections 7.2.2 and 7.3.3, concluding that it is not always a useful theoretical tool, though does provide a useful conceptualisation for the phenomenon of the conversational presumption, and the common shift in perspective and epistemic authority from speaker to addressee in questions. It then proposes a two-tiered approach to the discussion of perspective. This suggests that there is a noteworthy difference between the perspectives considered by the speaker in the construction of a speech act, and the perspectives referenced in the meaning of the form the speaker ultimately selects.

Finally, Section 7.5 presents the argument that the various functions of epistemic marking can be further united by a shared functional motivation, that of establishing a shared epistemic ground for communication to take place more efficiently. This is to say that there is a shared higher level function across epistemic marking, coordinating the relationship of the speaker and addressee to the information being presented and each other, and to establish a shared awareness of these relationships, such that possible ambiguity or disruptions to communication in the form of repair sequences can be avoided. While this is argued in theoretical terms, it is noted that there is a general lack of discourse data, such as dialogues, used in the literature to exemplify epistemic forms. As such there is substantial scope surrounding this conclusion for further research, in particular in descriptive or experimental work.

## 7.2 Mixed systems

### 7.2.1 Theoretical foundations

Existing typological literature on types of epistemic marking—that is, on epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement individually—tend to treat these topics in a siloed manner. Typologies of evidentiality such as Aikhenvald (2004) handle only evidential meanings, while typologies of engagement such as Evans et al. (2018a,b) handle only engagement structures, and so on. There is an exception to this in some literature on mirativity and egophoric-

ity, discussed by Hill (2012, 2020) in terms of the relation between these theoretical categories and evidentiality, and some others mentioned in Section 2.2. Beyond this, however, existing research is well-suited to the description of systems that fit more neatly into a single one of these categories. As was presented in the typological observations described in Section 5.2.3.1, there are a number of languages attested with epistemic-marking systems that mark meanings beyond the boundaries of a single of these categories. These are labelled in this thesis as **MIXED SYSTEMS**. These are systems in which, for instance, meanings such as direct and indirect evidence are encoded along with engagement-like meanings such as non-shared information, mirative meanings, epistemic modal meanings such as dubiative, or egophoricity. Mixed systems are more immediately obvious in what are being labelled here as paradigmatic systems, introduced in Section 2.5.1, given forms are more clearly in functional opposition in that they occupy the same grammatical slot. The alternative to paradigmatic systems, scattered systems, can also be mixed systems however, as despite being more formally disparate, the system overall can still be viewed as a single analytical unit, introduced in Section 2.5.1.1. As was mentioned above, there have been some attempts to consolidate these systems in parts. Specifically, Hill (2012) argues for an analysis of mirative-seeming forms as visual evidentials, an argument which, while well-founded in some cases, does not account for some mirative-marking forms in languages such as Kurtöp, presented in greater detail in the case studies in Section 7.2.2. Hill (2020) also argues for a view of egophoric marking as an evidential base rather than a category in its own right, pointing, among other examples, to the three-way distinction in Lhasa Tibetan between indirect, direct, and an egophoric base. Here, rather than treating two of these forms (all three of which are clearly functionally contrastive) as evidential and the third as separate and egophoric, Hill suggests that egophoricity is better viewed as an evidential base in which the self is the source of evidence. This aligns with research on language in Papua New Guinea, in which “participatory” evidence, or evidence gained through direct participation, is given as an evidential base (San Roque & Loughnane 2012). As with Hill’s criticism of mirativity, however, it is not clear that this explanation works perfectly with all contrasts described as egophoric. Specifically, this analysis is challenged by systems where personal authority is the key factor conditioning the use of the egophoric form as opposed to personal involvement. With this in mind, we must now consider how these mixed systems contribute to analysis of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages.

Firstly, it is clear that there is a shortfall in the analytical capabilities of the existing literature when dealing with systems such as these. Larger scale typologies in terms of number of languages surveyed have not been developed to account for systems with such functional breadth, even though links between the more limited functional scopes of the traditional categories have previously been drawn, as discussed in Section 2.4.6. In order to compare these systems, a broader typology is necessary to account for a higher level of unity in the varied descriptions of these systems, a number of which are presented as case studies in Section 7.2.2. Further, the existence of

these mixed systems has some pragmatic implications further justifying the use of the broader epistemic category of a valid coherent functional domain.

Two construals of the internal processes behind the construction of speech acts and the selection of specific morphemes at the exclusion of others are discussed in Section 2.6. It is argued that in any speech act, a given form is selected for use at the exclusion of any specifically contrasting forms. For example, in choosing to use a direct evidential form in a speech act, the speaker does so at the exclusion of an indirect one (assuming both exist in the language). In selecting one form at the exclusion of any functionally contrastive forms (or, in single term systems, at the exclusion of an unmarked speech act), a speaker must also consider these contrastive forms and their appropriateness in relation to the speech act at hand. As a result, mixed systems must be viewed as a sum of their parts, rather than just, for instance, an evidential and engagement-marking system in close proximity. With the idea that a speaker will consider the necessary conditions of each form within a system when choosing which one to use at the exclusion of the others, it can be concluded that in these mixed systems—regardless of which form a speaker ultimately chooses and the traditional cross-linguistic category to which that form belongs—they have internally (and subconsciously) considered the conditions of all applicable contrastive forms in the system and subsequently all applicable epistemic bases that could possibly be marked. This is to say that in languages with these mixed systems, the speaker is never solely considering, for instance, the source of their knowledge, or their confidence in said knowledge. Rather, they are necessarily always considering any epistemic base that could be marked within a system. These systems cannot be seen as limited to one category, or analysed in terms of single categories discretely, as such analyses would not capture the actual internal processes of the speaker.

Notably, with the inclusion of engagement marking, as seen in the case studies below, one conditioning factor considered by speakers in languages with engagement-like contrasts is a projection of the perspective of the addressee. In assuming that a speaker will consider all possible conditioning factors in all cases as argued above, speakers are also necessarily considering not only their own perspective, but also that of their addressee in any situation where epistemic marking is applicable. The domains of the grammar of a language in which said marking would be applicable vary from language to language. The presence of these contrasts reflecting the perspective of the addressee (or at least, the speaker's projection thereof) also appears to vary from language to language; it is argued in Sections 7.4 and 7.3 that these contrasts are more prevalent than may immediately appear to be the case.

### 7.2.2 Case studies

This section presents two case studies of languages with mixed epistemic systems: Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan) and Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC). The epistemic-marking systems in these languages are described in detail, both in terms of the traditional cross-linguistic categories,

and the typological observations presented in Chapter 5. For each case study language, the challenges that arise when attempting to describe these mixed epistemic systems solely within the framework of a single traditional cross-linguistic category are discussed, as is the usefulness of the more general approach for which this thesis advocates. These languages have been selected for their detailed descriptions of their epistemic marking systems, in particular the clarity they provide to this discussion of mixed systems. In this sense, they are at the far end of the spectrum in terms of how clear and demonstrable the issues at hand are, though the theoretical arguments made are no less applicable to the wider family.

#### 7.2.2.1 Kurtöp

Kurtöp is an East Bodish language spoken in Central to Eastern Bhutan (Hyslop 2017). The East Bodish family is a relatively small subfamily spoken almost entirely within Bhutan, with some speakers spilling out into the Arunachal Pradesh (specifically Tawang) and Tibet to the North-West. As discussed in detail in Section 3.3.5, while it is not currently possible to establish a clear phylogeny to account for the development of the subgroups of the Trans-Himalayan family, there appears to be a closer relation between East Bodish and Tibetic languages. Hyslop (2014a) suggests that, while there is a great deal of shared vocabulary and grammatical forms between individual East Bodish languages and Tibetic languages, much of this similarity does not reconstruct within the East Bodish family and is better attributed to widespread borrowing. Hyslop (2014a) also notes that, as is common across the family, detailed description is very limited. While there is a substantial amount of material published on Kurtöp by Hyslop, other literature on the family is limited to sketch grammars or small numbers of articles on specific features of languages (see Tombleson (2020) and Donohue & Donohue (2019) for two examples on Tawang Monpa and Bumthang), as well as Honours<sup>1</sup> theses from Hyslop's students (Bosch 2016, Hewitt 2020), on Upper Mangdep and Khengkha, the latter of which is presently being developed into a Doctoral thesis. With this limited description, more confident reconstruction and subsequent clear establishment of the relationship between the East Bodish and Tibetic families is not currently possible. The language family has and continues to be in close contact with Tibetic languages, in particular with Dzongkha as the national language of Bhutan and contact language to the East, as well as historically Kham Tibetic varieties to the North. This close contact and its possible implications will be further discussed in Chapter 6, particularly regarding the possibility that the epistemic system of Kurtöp discussed here, and others nearby, may have developed under influence from Tibetic languages.

The epistemic system in Kurtöp is deeply entrenched in a number of areas of the grammar of the language. There are a number of grammatical paradigms, some clearly related and others less so, carrying epistemic marking in different grammatical domains. This paradigmatic structure

---

<sup>1</sup>Australian equivalent of an integrated MA.

TABLE 7.1: *Perfective paradigm in Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2017) with the closest cross-linguistic category*. Reproduced from Bodnaruk (in press: 79)

Form	Meaning	Cross-linguistic Category
<i>-shang</i>	Direct evidence non-shared	Evidentiality and engagement
<i>-pala</i>	Direct evidence	Evidentiality
<i>-na</i>	Mirative	Mirativity
<i>-mu</i>	Indirect evidence	Evidentiality
<i>-para</i>	Low certainty/Low epistemic support	Epistemic modality

of multiple paradigms across the grammar is distinct from scattered epistemic marking in that in any individual speech act, the choice of epistemic marking exists within a single paradigm or grammatical domain. In the perfective aspect which will be specifically discussed here, the epistemic marking system exists within the verbal morphology, though in copulative clauses, a different set of forms exists within the set of copulas in the language. This is contrasted with scattered systems, in which, for example, a single speech act could, all other conditions being equal, see a speaker selecting a verbal suffix, copula, or nominaliser to mark different epistemic meanings. The perfective, copular, and imperfective epistemic paradigms will be discussed here.

The perfective aspect in Kurtöp has five bases, presented in Table 7.1 along with the category or label that best fits the form. Each of these forms and labels will be specifically discussed.

These forms are mutually exclusive and obligatory in the perfective aspect, all also carrying the perfective meaning alongside their epistemic one. Hyslop (2014b, 2017, 2018b) describes the meanings encoded by the forms in Table 7.1 in opposition to each other using a binary tree, reproduced in Figure 7.1. Notably, these forms are not assigned to specific cross-linguistic categories, but rather are defined in terms of the differences between forms and their specific meanings. Hyslop does, however, use specific terminology when describing the forms in greater detail and in glossing. Each form will be discussed specifically below, with a consideration of the terminology used by Hyslop as well as the specific meanings and conditions of use both in Hyslop's analysis and in the examples provided.

The form *-shang* is defined against the functionally similar form *-pala* as marking exclusive knowledge on the part of the speaker. It is not specifically described as marking engagement, given these publications all predate Evans et al. (2018a,b) and the introduction of the term engagement in reference to the more formalised cross-linguistic phenomenon. Rather, Hyslop describes the form as egophoric, referencing the initially observed tendency of the contrast between *-shang* and *-pala* to follow the archetypal egophoric distribution, noting that in naturalistic data recorded in situ this tendency does not reflect the actual use of the forms. This is to say that, typically speaking, the higher speaker-authority form *-shang* occurs more commonly in elicitation in first-person statements and second-person questions, while the lower form *-pala* occurs more

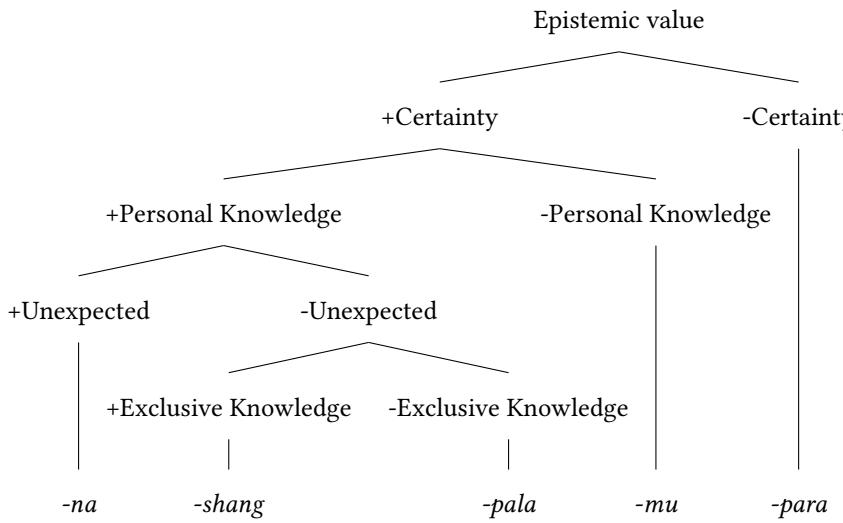


Figure 7.1: A representation of the functional contrasts marked by the Kurtöp perfective aspect paradigm, reproduced from Hyslop (2017: 129).

commonly in other cases (Hyslop 2018b: 129). The challenge with the sole usage of elicitation as a methodology for the analysis of epistemic forms is that the utterances are potentially bleached of context. The lack of real-world context surrounding the elicited speech act means that the selection of obligatory epistemic marking, such as here in Kurtöp, is not naturally possible. This is further confounded by the observation that speakers tend not to have a conscious awareness of the exact meanings or usage conditions of epistemic forms (Grzech et al. 2020), and as such cannot necessarily readily simulate the usage of these epistemic forms in direct elicitation, even if an example context is given. Rather, in usage, the contrast between *-shang* and *-pala* is conditioned by the exclusivity of the knowledge to the epistemic origo. As such, in contextually bare speech acts, the usage of the forms does follow the archetypal egophoric distribution. However, in contextually rich usage, this is not necessarily the case (Hyslop 2018b). In referencing both the access of the speaker and the addressee to the given piece of information, this contrast could be better described as in fact marking engagement were it to be ascribed a label of this sort.

Hyslop contrasts *-shang* and *-pala*, which mark expected or unsurprising knowledge, against *-na*, the mirative. Hill (2012) argues against the existence of the mirative as a valid cross-linguistic category, and instead attempts to explain mirative meanings as alternatively construed direct evidential markers. He argues that the construal of mirative meaning is an artefact of the necessary immediacy of the source of information in speech acts marked with direct or visual evidentials. While he has reasonable success in refuting DeLancey's (1997) analysis of Lhasa Tibetan *'dug* as mirative, the same counterargument does not seem to hold here. This is because the form is specifically contrasted against forms with a direct or visual evidential meaning that do not mark the same mirative meaning. That is, if the form *-na* does not mark the mirative function, marking

a given piece of information as new or unexpected, then there is nothing to distinguish it from specifically the form *-pala*, which marks direct visual evidence unmarked of engagement. Interestingly, the mirative *-na* does not appear to be limited to speaker-origo, but rather is also attested in narrative. Here, the necessary prior knowledge by the speaker of the events in the narrative they are telling precludes them from reflecting their own perspective as new or unexpected. As such, the origo cannot logically lie with the speaker in these cases. The presence of mirative marking in narratives is not unique to Kurtöp; for example, it is attested in Atong (Brahmaputran: India, van Breugel 2014), Munya (Qiangic: PRC, Bai 2019), Poumai Naga (Angami-Pochuri: India, Veikho 2021), Yakkha (Kiranti: Nepal, Schackow 2015), and Lepcha (Internal Isolate: India, Plaisier 2007). In some of these cases, it is clear that the use of the mirative in narrative reflects a character origo: the character in the story is surprised by information newly presented to them within the context of the story. This is a common function of epistemic marking in narratives, also seen in analyses of evidential and egophoric marking, to be further discussed in Section 7.4.2. In Kurtöp, however, as in some other cases, this does not appear to be the case. Rather, the mirative marker appears to mark a moment in a narrative as new or unexpected for the audience or the addressee.

The three forms *-shang*, *-pala*, and *-na*, all appear to also carry a direct evidential meaning, though Hyslop (2014b: 113) describes this in terms of the presence of “personal knowledge”. The direct evidential meaning can more specifically be construed from their contrast with the expressly indirect or inferential marker *-mu*. This form is described briefly as carrying only this evidential meaning, and is presented as doing so in contrast with the three forms discussed above. Finally, in contrast with all other forms, the form *-para* marks low epistemic support from the perspective of the speaker.

This paradigm, given in full in Table 7.1, is a good example of the SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER gradient discussed in the typological overview of this project in Section 5.2.3.2. The five forms range from a high level of epistemic authority on the part of the origo in *-shang* and its non-shared information meaning, with each subsequent form in Table 7.1 reflecting a lower claim<sup>2</sup> over the epistemic authority by the epistemic origo. The form *-pala* reflects direct, previously assimilated knowledge but without the exclusive non-shared information meaning of *-shang*; *-na* reflects this direct evidence but without the previous assimilation; *-mu* reflects certainty but without direct evidence; while *-para* does not reflect the certainty of the other forms.

These forms show a degree of variation within the paradigm in terms of the reflection of perspectives. All forms in declarative structures reflect some aspect of the perspective of the speaker, including *-shang*, which carries a direct evidential meaning. The forms are attested to reflect the perspective of the addressee when used in interrogative structures (Hyslop 2018b), exhibiting the

---

<sup>2</sup>Of course, in cases where the origo is not the speaker, there is no agentive ‘claim’ being made by said origo, but rather the status of the authority is being projected and granted by the speaker. This is further discussed in Section 7.4.2.

common shift of origo from speaker to addressee in questions referred to by Hill (2020) as the conversational presumption. In addition to this, however, there are also forms which necessarily reflect the perspective of both the speaker and listener in declarative structures. Reflection of the perspective of the addressee is typical of engagement marking per Evans et al. (2018a), and can be seen here in all cases in *-shang*, as well as potentially in *-na* in narratives where the mirative meaning reflects an expectation that the marked event will be new or unexpected to the addressee. A more detailed discussion of perspective and the origo can be found in Section 7.4, but for the sake of discussion it is clear that there is substantial variation in the reflection of perspective across the paradigm.

This paradigm exists alongside two other epistemic-marking paradigms, along with a small number of other forms to be discussed below. The first of these two other paradigms is the similarly complex copula system. As is common in many languages in the Trans-Himalayan family, Kurtöp has two sets of copular morphemes, an existential and an equative set. The existential set are used in sentences marking the existence or presence of some referent, potentially at a given location or in an individual's possession, while the equative set is used to equate two referents, being nouns or adjectives.

In Kurtöp, a small set of base copulas are complemented by a much larger set of complex or composed forms, which can be reconstructed with varying success to the grammaticalisation of a base copula and some other morphology. These base copulas are *wen* and *min* as the equational positive and negative forms and *nak* and *mut* as the existential equivalents (Hyslop 2014b: 120). Notably the forms *nak* and *mut*, while reconstructable, are not attested in their base forms. Many of the contrasts in the larger set of complex copulas reflect the contrasts already discussed for the perfective-marking paradigm, including some which appear to be morphologically related. The form *nawala* is used for knowledge that is certain on the part of the speaker but is not new or unexpected; largely equivalent to the perfective *-pala* and seeming to be a grammaticalisation of the base copula *nak* and *-pala*. Similarly, there is a form *nawara*, likely composed of *nak* and the perfective suffix *-para*, that carries the same low epistemic confidence meaning as the perfective suffix. Not all forms have this clear etymology. The mirative copula *nâ* appears to be the descendent of the original base copula, and is in fact the least marked of the copulas. Finally, not all of the existential copulas are so clearly equivalent to bases in the imperfective paradigm. The form *naki* carries a similar meaning of uncertainty to *nawara*, contrasting in evidential terms in that it requires direct visual evidence while *nawara* does not. There is a final form *naksho/nakshu* which seems to remain uncertain (Hyslop 2014b: 122, 2017: 311) but may be related to the similarly composed equative copula *yincok* in the geographically neighbouring Tibetic language Chocangaca (Bodnaruk 2023a).

The imperfective paradigm only contrasts two epistemic bases, based on whether information is or is not unexpected. While the meaning of the mirative form *-ta* is similar to that of

TABLE 7.2: A comparison of the epistemic bases and their meanings across four paradigms in Kurtöp drawing data from Hyslop (2014b, 2017).

				Perfective	Imperfective	Existential Copular	Equative Copular
High confidence	Direct evidence	Expected	Origo exclusive	-shang	-taki	nawala	wen
			Non exclusive	-pala			
		Unexpected/mirative	-na	-ta	nâ	wenta	
Low confidence	Indirect evidence		-mu				
	Direct evidence			-para		naki	
Indirect evidence						nawara	wenpara
Lower confidence							winim

the perfective form *-na*, it is used much far widely. This is potentially a logical outcome of the difference in temporality. Hyslop (2017: 307) notes that the mirative *-ta* is more commonly used with third-person agents. The actions of these third-person agents is inherently less accessible to the speaker than their own actions specifically when speaking in the imperfective aspect (about actions that have not yet taken place), and as such the more common usage of the mirative form in the imperfective is not surprising. Table 7.1 compares the epistemic bases marked by the perfective, imperfective, and both copular paradigms. While these epistemic bases do not align, in all epistemic marking subsystems there is a gradient that can be analysed from meaning closest to the speaker to furthest from the speaker, and in many cases these bases cross the boundaries of traditional cross-linguistic categories.

There are also a number of epistemic forms that are not part of these paradigms, such as the reported speech clitic *=ri* and the counter expectation clitic *=sa*. Unlike the other independent paradigms within the epistemic system, these forms do cooccur forms in the other paradigms, such as the perfective markers. An example of this is given in (33). Here, the speaker is asking the location of a third party, a question to which he thought he had heard the answer but has, counter to his expectations, realised he does not in fact know. Firstly, the copulative clause asking the individual's location is marked with the reportative clitic *=ri*, marking that the speaker expects this information to have been acquired second-hand. Secondly, the perfective clause is marked with the high speaker authority, non-shared information perfective suffix *-shang*, as the speaker has sole access to his experience, as well as the counter expective clitic *=sa*, as he had expected to have remembered.

- (33)    'au    nawori...                         ngai    koshangsa  
       'au    nak-po=ri                         ngai    ko-shang=sa  
       where COP.EXIS-QP:PERV=REP 1.ERG hear-PERV.EGO=CEXP  
       'Where (did I hear) (he) was? I thought I heard (to self)?'

Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2014b: 126)

The typologies presented in the currently available literature on topics such as the more traditional categories of evidentiality, epistemic modality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement

struggle to capture and describe the epistemic-marking systems in Kurtöp. Aikhenvald (2004) presents one of, if not the, earliest major attempts to develop a typology of evidentiality marking across the world. She demonstrates a categorisation of evidential systems primarily based on the number of bases contrasted in the system, and then by the specific functional content of these contrasts. This is not dissimilar to the typology presented in Chapter 5, grouping epistemic systems both by size and by function, but is more specific in terms of the number of contrasts and only assesses evidential functions. While very functional for describing systems that only mark evidential contrasts, it is readily clear that a system such as that in Kurtöp, even if reduced to just the perfective paradigm, cannot be accurately classified within Aikhenvald's framework despite marking some evidential meanings. Kurtöp only contrasts on two evidential bases—direct and indirect—in this case more specifically comprising experiential, visual, and other sensory sources of information contrasted against inference and hearsay. It could perhaps also be argued that the *-shang/-pala*, analysed here as falling more under the umbrella of engagement, represents a separation of the experiential evidential base as argued for egophoric systems by Gawne (2017). This can be fairly readily disproven, however, with the attestation of *-shang* with non-first-person statements where the source of evidence cannot be experiential, as in (34).

- (34) *zhang pep-shang*  
 heaven arrive.HON-PERV.EGO  
 '(the lama) passed away (lit. arrived in heaven).' Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan, Hyslop 2014b: 114)

This would classify this paradigm as an A1 evidential system, one that marks only a firsthand/non-firsthand distinction. Aikhenvald (2004) also does not account for personal experience as a source of evidence, an omission noted previously by Hill (2020), separating egophoricity from evidentiality completely.

Similar challenges exist for other categories. Only *-shang* marks any explicit engagement-like meaning, in that it references the mental access of the speaker and lack of access of the addressee to the information at hand, only *-na* marks explicit mirative meaning, and only *-para* marks explicit epistemic modality. It could be analysed that each of these in fact represents a two-way distinction between marked and unmarked; regardless, in no case does an analysis of Kurtöp within any singular framework lead to anything close to a complete picture of the actual system. This is perhaps why Hyslop generally seems to have avoided using such terms in her labelling of these forms. While they are still glossed as "EGO or MIR" and so on, Hyslop (2014b, 2017, 2018b) describes the actual contrasts with non-jargon terms such as "Certainty", "Shared Experience", and "Personal Knowledge" (Hyslop 2014b: 113).

As discussed in Section 7.2.1, there is also a functional reason that these more siloed approaches to analysis fall short. In choosing a given form from, to continue the example, the perfective paradigm, a speaker is not only choosing to use a given form; they are also choosing to

not use any other one. That is, in order to select the most correct form given the epistemic context of the speech act at hand, the speaker needs to consider the functions of all forms within the paradigm. Rather than thinking of each form as carrying its meaning and as being independent from all others in a paradigm, it is in this case perhaps better to consider the paradigm as a whole of having a set of conditions to be assessed by the speaker in order to select the correct form, all of which must be considered every time a form is selected.

In viewing this epistemic-marking paradigm as such, a set of conditions can be developed for the paradigm to denote the various assessments of the context of the speech act undertaken by the speaker. For instance, while only *-shang* explicitly marks information about the speaker's assessment of the addressee's perspective, it can be presumed that at the very least such an assessment also happens in cases where the alternative *-pala* is used instead, if not in every perfective speech act along with other conditions such as the source of information and the speaker's own confidence and expectations surrounding the information at hand. This implies that rather than a single form being a "evidential marker" or "engagement marker" independent of other forms, the entire paradigm must be seen as being conditioned by all the factors described above, regardless of which form is ultimately used. With this, it is not readily possible to describe the paradigm, and subsequently the entire system as a sum of the aforementioned paradigms and outlying forms, as any single category. Rather, this necessitates a single term to denote all of these traditional cross-linguistic categories as they are marked together. Here, the term "epistemic" has been used to represent grammatical subsystems which mark these sets of meanings, or the usage of which are informed by these conditioning factors.

#### 7.2.2.2 Eastern Geshiza

Eastern Geshiza is a rGyalrongic language spoken in Sichuan Province, PRC (Honkasalo 2019). It is a member of the rGyalrongic subgroup often referred to as the Horpa languages or lects (though Honkasalo (2019: 3) discusses potential issues with this term), referred to by Glottolog (Hammarström et al. 2024) as West rGyalrongic in contrast to Core rGyalrongic, following (Gates 2012). Literature on these languages is fairly limited - Gates (2021) provides a clear overview of the fairly disparate sketch grammars which have been published in Chinese and English over the last 50 years. In terms of comprehensive descriptions, however, the West rGyalrongic Horpa languages are much better described than the East Bodish languages discussed above, with comprehensive grammars of varieties of Khroskyabs (Lai 2017), Stau (Gates 2021, Tunzhi 2019), and of course Eastern Geshiza (Honkasalo 2019) all written as PhD theses, among other non-English or shorter descriptive works. While van Driem (2014) places rGyalrongic as a leaf on its own, it has also been positioned as a subfamily within a larger Qiangic group (Honkasalo 2019: 15), though both this positioning and the Qiangic subfamily itself have been questioned for their valid-

ity as actual genealogical groups as opposed to potential examples of widespread areal diffusion (Honkasalo 2019, Chirkova 2012).

The epistemic-marking system in Eastern Geshiza predominantly appears as a paradigm of verbal suffixes, presented in Table 7.3. Honkasalo (2019: 584) notes that the marking of epistemic meaning is obligatory, though that the “ego-oriented” form is unmarked or marked with a null morpheme. This is in line with the wider trend for unmarked forms to represent meaning closest to the speaker. This egophoric base is conditioned by volition on the part of the speaker. Actions directly experienced by the speaker but without their control, such as a dream, are marked instead with the inferential *-s<sup>hi</sup>i*. This is at odds with similar distinctions in, for instance, Lhasa Tibetan, where non-volitional first-person actions would be marked either with the dedicated speaker-patient form *-byung* or with the direct evidential. The extensions of egophoric meaning and claims of highest epistemic authority by speakers seen in languages such as Amdo Tibetan (Tribur 2019) are also attested in Eastern Geshiza, in that the egophoric base can be used with non-first-person agents in cases where the speaker has a deep intimate knowledge about the information at hand. This includes a lasting state of being or habitual action of, for instance, a family member, in both cases persistent states of affairs or repeating actions that are unlikely to change or have recently changed.

The next form moving further from the highest level of epistemic authority is the sensory evidential *-ræ*, which marks information from any sensory source including non-visual sources such as taste and physical sensation. It is potentially cognate with the Mazur Stau sensory evidential *-rə* (Gates 2021: 347). Generic information or general world knowledge are also marked with the sensory evidential rather than the egophoric form. The inferential marker *-s<sup>hi</sup>i*, beyond its use above in some non-volitional first-person actions, acts more or less as would be expected, marking information gained without direct sensory or participatory evidence. This extends to sources of information for which the speaker was present but does not mentally have access to, such as their own birth. (Honkasalo 2019: 589) suggests a possible diachronic route for the development of this form, though notes some possible challenges with the development of a Proto-Trans-Himalayan \*-s into *-s<sup>hi</sup>i* within Eastern Geshiza. Not noted, however, is the formal similarity between the form and functionally similar forms in varieties of the related Khroskyabs language. Taylor-Adams & Lhawa (2020) give a mirative marker *-(t)s<sup>hi</sup>i* for the variety spoken in Siyewu, while Lai (2017) gives the form *-si* in the Wobzi variety as carrying both inferential and mirative meaning. This lends some support for areal diffusion of the form given the similarities of these forms and their functions, as well as the geographical proximity of the speaker groups being spoken in neighbouring counties within Sichuan province. Interestingly, despite the documented function of the form in the Wobzi variety of Khroskyabs appearing closer to Eastern Geshiza than the Siyewu variety, geographically speaking Siyewu appears to be between Geshiza and Wobzi, assuming the Dajin River valley is used as a passage through the mountains. Running downstream along the

Dajin River instead of upstream, Gates (2021) describes another formally similar form *-sə*, again an inferential evidential with some mirative uses, and notes a further cognate form in Tangut of *sji<sup>2</sup>*, also an inferential (Lai et al. 2020). The likely cognacy of these forms, along with the age of Tangut (which is attested only in historical record and was spoken circa 1038-1227 (Lai et al. 2020)), suggests that they are a common inheritance rather than an areal feature. Gates (2021), Honkasalo (2019), and Shuya Zhang (2022) all note that these forms are polyfunctional, also being used as nominalisers among other things. Regardless of the exact development of these forms, the inferential meaning of the cognate form both in the historical Tangut and in the modern-day languages of Mazur Stau, two varieties of Khroskyabs, and Eastern Geshiza suggests that such meaning could have applied to the ancestral form. The similarity between sensory evidentials *-ræ* in Eastern Geshiza and *-rɔ* in Mazur Stau is also present possibly in Khroskyabs as the prefix *rɔ-*, which can have sensory evidential meaning (Lai 2017). If these forms can in fact be reconstructed with epistemic meaning to a shared ancestor, it may be one of, if not the only, case where such is possible for epistemic marking.

The next two forms are the reportative and quotative, respectively marking indirect reported speech (information gained through someone else) and direct reported speech (actual quotation). The reportative *-jə* is a clear and fairly recent grammaticalisation of the verb *jə* ‘to say’. The verb as a lexical item is still used to mark directly quoted speech, often with the dedicated quotative *-wo*, which is only able to be attached to *jə* and other *verba dicendi*.

Honkasalo (2019) separates the above four markers, labelled as “evidentiality”, and the final two, labelled as “engagement” in his presentation and description of the system. Honkasalo notes that these final two forms do not fit within the narrow scope of evidential marking in functional terms and as such groups these forms—which occupy the same grammatical slot as the others and share a clear functional domain—as separate. This separation appears to only exist in definitional terms - evidentiality has a limited functional scope, and as such part of the paradigm must be analysed within a different framework. This is the core of the argument presented here. There is little linguistic reason not to treat the paradigm as it really appears, being a single system marking a broader set of epistemic meanings, with a much broader set of conditioning factors.

The first of these two “engagement” markers is the non-shared-information marker *-go*. This form marks information which the speaker knows confidently, but does not expect the addressee to have yet have access to. Functionally, this forms appears similar to the Kurtöp non-shared-information marker *-shang*, but shows a key distributional difference. While Kurtöp *-shang* is used in first-person statements as a default, marking that a speaker tends to have exclusive access to their own internal awareness, Eastern Geshiza *-go* is generally limited to third person statements. Instead, first person statements are unmarked, taking the default ego-oriented epistemic base. It is also rarely, if ever, used with second person subjects in declaratives, as it is difficult for a speaker to have greater knowledge over their addressee’s internal state than the addressee themselves. This

suggests that, while in Kurtöp the non-shared-information marker represents the highest possible claim of authority, the separate ego-oriented form in Eastern Geshiza sits higher in the hierarchy.

The final form described in Honkasalo (2019) is a form *-mə* of unclear epistemic meaning. It may represent knowledge that is new to the speaker, in contrast with the previously described *-go*, though Honkasalo notes that this does not account for every attested use. Given the brief description of this form and the lack of clarity in the analysis, at least at the time of submission of this doctoral thesis, this form will not be further discussed.

Table 7.3 provides all of these forms in order from closest to furthest from the speaker in terms of epistemic authority. A decision has been made here to place the reportative above the quotative. A core difference between the two in Eastern Geshiza, functionally speaking, is the presence of a specified third-party source of the information at hand. That is, the use of the reportative *-jə* marks simply that the information was at some point said by a third party, while the direct quotations marked by the quotative *-wo* attaches to *verba dicendi* forming a matrix clause over which a specified information source is the subject. While this not necessarily a named or explicitly marked individual, verbs in Eastern Geshiza unmarked for person take third-person meaning, and still reference a specific third party (Honkasalo 2019: 592). In the larger scheme of this typology of functional cline from high to low epistemic authority, this distinction is arguably less marked or clear, but the distinction made here to place the reportative as higher than the quotative is based on this reference to a specified individual information source. That is, in the use of the quotative, the speaker is referencing a specific individual as their information source and is subsequently passing off some responsibility over the information to this individual, whereas with the reportative the speaker can be understood to be maintaining responsibility over the information themselves, in turn claiming a higher level of authority. This idea of responsibility is aligns with the Gricean maxim of quality. There is an expectation in cooperative conversation that what a speaker says is, to the best of their knowledge, true. A claim over epistemic authority is strongly tempered by confidence. This can be seen most clearly with epistemic modality, the confidence of the epistemic origo in the truthfulness of the information at hand. It can also be seen more generally in epistemic marking when considering the common links between low confidence and inferential marking, for instance. Lower claims of epistemic authority often (though not necessarily, as is discussed in Section 7.3) reflect a lower level of confidence in the truthfulness of the information at hand. As such, the reference to an explicit information source in the quotative can be seen to temper confidence of the epistemic origo by essentially citing another source. This juxtaposes the reportative, which while claiming less authority than, for instance, the sensory evidential form *-ræ*, still involves the epistemic origo as the sole specific individual responsible for the truthfulness of the information being presented. Finally, the ego-oriented unmarked form is placed above the non-shared information on the grounds that, while both epistemic bases involve a claim of exclusivity of information, it is clear in (35) that the non-shared information marker

TABLE 7.3: *Epistemic marking paradigm in Eastern Geshiza, forms reproduced from (Honkasalo 2019: 584), with order changed to reflect SPEAKER/NON-SPEAKER typology.*

	Function	Form
Higher speaker authority	ego-oriented	unmarked
	non-shared information	-go
	sensory	-ræ
	inferential	-s <sup>b</sup> i
	reportative	-ja
Lower speaker authority	quotative	-wo
	<i>unclear</i>	-mə

-go covers information sourced through visual evidence, and as such is exclusively held by the speaker but not irrefutably claimed by the speaker. This is contrasted with egophoric meaning, in which the speaker claims personal internal knowledge.

The conclusion drawn here is not dissimilar to that from Kurtöp above. To fully describe and analyse the system of epistemic marking in Eastern Geshiza, a more general, unified framework is necessary to avoid functional relationships between the various forms being obscured. This system in particular, while showing a lower level of variety in terms of the traditional categories represented than in Kurtöp, does also contain forms marking engagement-like meanings, in that their use is conditioned by the perspective of both the speaker and addressee in declarative structures. While this does not in and of itself support the argument that speakers are necessarily considering the relevant aspects of the perspectives of both themselves and their addressee in any given speech act, (35) shows an interesting example of the non-shared information marker -go in use.

- (35) a. *e smæŋja gæ-mdze æ-lə ηuə-go*  
DEM girl ADJZ-beautiful one-CLF.INDEF COP.3-NSI  
‘That girl is beautiful’
- b. *ηuə-ræ. ηuə-ræ. mdze-ræ.*  
COP.3-SENS COP.3-SENS be.beautiful-SENS  
‘Yes, yes. She is beautiful.’

Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC, Honkasalo 2019: 593)

The speaker in (35a) sees a woman enter the room in which both speech act participants are standing, but behind the addressee. As such, in selecting which form to use, he uses the non-shared information marker -go based on an assessment of his perspective (he can see this directly) as well as that of his addressee, who he does not believe can see the woman. In the addressee’s response in (35b), they agree that the woman is indeed beautiful, now using the sensory evidential marker -ræ. The use of this form is clearly because they have now seen the woman in question,

and as such have direct sensory evidence for their statement. It perhaps seems evident and unimportant, but the use of this form here is also necessarily informed by the fact that the addressee is clearly aware that the original speaker knows this, given he first introduced the topic. While this seems a given, it is still a reflection of the fact that, even when using a form that would be traditionally categorised as evidentiality and not engagement, the second speaker is still making an assessment of the perspective of their interlocutor. While in this case it is a straightforward assessment given the context, it is still reflected in the choice of *-ræ* over *-go* in (35b).

This epistemic-marking paradigm is marked across multiple aspects, including on copulative and verbal clauses. This is unlike Kurtöp, which has distinct set of markers for each aspectual distinction. In Kurtöp, each of the epistemic markers also carry the aspectual meaning themselves (such that every form in Table 7.1 could in fact be glossed as its epistemic meaning and perfective), whereas in Eastern Geshiza this aspectual meaning is encoded through a separate prefix. There are, however, some strategies for marking epistemic meaning outside of this paradigm, mostly involving lexical or periphrastic constructions. These include the use of verbs of perception encoding a sensory evidential meaning, as well as a nominalised construction with a specific copula, which neutralises any ego-oriented meaning and rather references an indirect base (Honkasalo 2019: 596). As seen in other rGyalrongic languages (Lai 2017, Gates 2021, Shuya Zhang 2022), this nominaliser shares a form with the inherited inferential marker *-s<sup>hi</sup>*, already mentioned earlier in this case study. The polyfunctionality of this form is common across the family, and may have contributed to its retention across the family from the family's common ancestor. This reduction of a claim over epistemic authority in nominalisation (or at least the similar forms) is interestingly similar to the ego neutralisation in Milang nominalised constructions, introduced in 5.2.3.2 and discussed further in Section 7.3.3.

## 7.3 Social conditions

### 7.3.1 Theoretical foundations

The discussions above are primarily focussed on meanings of forms in terms of conditioning factors related to the perspectives of the speaker and addressee, specifically their relationship to the information being presented in epistemic terms. That is, the areas of evidentiality, egophoricity, epistemic modality, mirativity, and engagement all refer to metapropositional information about the information presented in a speech act specifically from the perspective of the epistemic origo. They do not, at their core, reflect any assessment on the part of the speaker of their own relationship to either the addressee or a third party. This section argues that this is a shortfall of many previous (though not all) analyses of epistemic-marking systems, and that in many more cases than has previously been expected, the interpersonal relationships of the parties relevant to a speech act also condition the use of epistemic marking. These are labelled as 'social conditions'.

This section presents an in-depth discussion of these social conditions, including the challenges that may be faced in analysis of data from the field, as well as a number of documented cases of social conditions on epistemic marking in Amdo Tibetan (Tibetic: PRC), Ladakhi (Tibetic: India), and Milang (Siangic: India). In these case studies, the ability of an individual to make a claim over higher epistemic is shown to be at least partly informed by social relationships or hierarchy, or, in the case of Milang, the socially appropriate responses are subsequently informed by the level of claim made by the speaker.

The concept of the epistemic origo, discussed in more detail in Section 7.4.2, assumes to some extent a single point of reference for the epistemic content of a given proposition. The origo is the individual, either a speech act participant or occasionally character in a narrative, from whose perspective any epistemic meaning is construed. As discussed in Section 7.4.2, the origo is most commonly the speaker in declarative constructions and the addressee in interrogatives, though it can also reference the addressee in declarative structures or speaker in interrogative structures. The concept, however, struggles to handle situations with multiple perspectives encoded or considered in a single speech act, a feature of the case studies discussed in Section 7.2.2. The social conditions discussed here are handled similarly to other epistemic marking by the origo concept, with a key difference. While there is initially a clear origo distinction when the speaker is attentive to their own relationship to others, or when the speaker is referencing the relationships of the addressee, cases in which the relationship between the speaker and addressee is relevant present a challenge in that relationships are an inherently two-way process.<sup>3</sup> As such it is not immediately possible to apply the origo to either of the speech act participants. It could be argued that a given relationship between two individuals can be viewed from the perspective of either individual, and that two individuals may not have the same perception of a relationship. It is nonetheless difficult to see how this could be represented in speech, given that, regardless of the epistemic origo or perspectives being represented, any information encoded in language is from the speaker, and any assessment of the perspective of the addressee is still necessarily filtered by the perspective of the speaker. While this problem of the speaker lens can be dismissed readily enough when discussing addressee perspective in specific reference to a piece of information, or in reference to an addressee's relationship with others, it cannot readily be dismissed when the metapropositional information at hand still involves the speaker. As such, any reference to the relationship specifically between the speaker and addressee must be analysed as speaker origo. This is of specific relevance to the data presented below from Ladakhi.

---

<sup>3</sup>This is excluding the so-called “parasocial” relationships which have become a feature of contemporary media in which there is a perceived close, but one-way relationship between an individual and a public figure who does not know them. Given I am referring here to conversations between two individuals with a given relationship, the low likelihood of an interaction occurring between such an individual and public figure means I do not believe I need to account for this edge case.

As with other conditions of epistemic marking as discussed in Section 5.2.3.2, the social conditions presented in the three case studies all appear to condition the social appropriateness of a claim over epistemic authority by the epistemic origo. If the unmarked default of epistemic marking is generally the highest, then social conditions temper the ability of the origo to make such a claim. This seems straightforward when considered as such: a claim over epistemic authority is reliant not only on the access of the origo to the information, but also of the access of the other speech act participant, and the relationship of the origo to their counterpart in terms of social hierarchy. Despite this, potentially for reasons discussed in Section 7.3.2, little has been published specifically addressing these social conditions. With all of this in mind, these social conditions are of particular interest, as they add an extra dimension to the functions of epistemic marking, in turn adding further dimensions to the discussion on the ultimate functional motivations for the grammaticalisation of epistemic marking. Specifically, they provide a further scope of deictic reference, still relating to the perceived relationship of the speaker to the context of the utterance, but in this case with specific reference to their relationship to other individuals involved in the speech act in some way (participant or referent) rather than to the information itself. Of course, these conditioning factors are present alongside the relationship of the epistemic origo to the information itself in more established terms, and both of these are relevant to the claim of epistemic authority being exercised (or granted to) the origo.

### 7.3.2 Challenges

There are a number of challenges associated with the documentation and subsequent analysis of epistemic marking. As discussed in Appendix A, perhaps due to their highly deictic and internal nature, the meanings of epistemic markings are often not consciously available to speakers, especially those who have not either been formally educated in their language (something highly limited to a handful of languages with substantial institutional backing such as Lhasa Tibetan), or spent a substantial amount of time actively and analytically thinking about language (something which is essentially limited to linguists). Additionally, there are challenges in the analysis of naturalistic speech, especially regarding the ability of the analyst to actually ascertain what the deictic context of a given speech act was in epistemic terms. That is, outside of controlled environments such as the activities used in Appendix A in studying Lhokpu, the analyst needs to know what the speaker already knows and how. This can be more easily accessed in the moment, with the linguist present for said context themselves.

These two challenges apply as much, if not more, to the analysis of social conditions. Given they are very much secondary conditioning factors on the use of epistemic marking, and not the primary meaning, it can be expected that the presence of these conditions will be even less consciously available to speakers, and as such can only be identified alongside other epistemic contrasts and conditions. However, the identification and analysis of these conditioning factors

requires two further pieces of knowledge on the part of the analyst: knowledge of the relationship of the speech act participants and referents to each other, and of any cultural aspects that may affect these relationships. There is an ongoing discussion about the role of colonialism in documentary linguistics and the inclusion of community and indigenous linguists in all processes, and I do not seek to contribute to it here in this setting. However, this is a clear example of the necessity of deep cultural knowledge in linguistic description, and does give value to the idea that there are inherent limitations on a very removed and impersonal approach to linguistic fieldwork. It is possible that the lack of documented cases of clear social conditions on epistemic marking is a result of the young age of the field and of widespread and in-depth description work. That being said, the secondary nature of these social conditions means that descriptions of epistemic-marking systems that are not yet able to consider the social context of a given speech act are not inherently *wrong*, but rather are not necessarily capturing the entire picture of the factors conditioning the use of the various forms.

### 7.3.3 Case studies

This section comprises three case studies of documented social conditions on the use of epistemic marking in Amdo Tibetan, Ladakhi, and Milang. Both Ladakhi and Amdo Tibetan are Tibetic languages with some etymologically related forms in their epistemic systems, though are descended from likely very distant branches of the Tibetic family. Tournadre & Suzuki (2023) place them in the North-Western and North-Eastern groups respectively, though they do not provide any potential phylogeny for the Tibetic family. Bialek (2018) suggests that Western Archaic Tibetan, a parent language or subgroup that would include Ladakhi, may exist as the outgroup and earliest separated subgroup of the Tibetic languages. This is to say that, while both clearly Tibetic, and while both do tend to be more phonologically conservative (Tribur 2019, Zemp 2018), it is unlikely that they are members of branches within the Tibetic subfamily that are closely related.

Milang is classified by van Driem (2014) as being one of two members of the Siangic subfamily, along with the geographically non-contiguous Koro. This subgroup is among the least well supported by clear and unambiguous evidence, as an undetermined substrate and significant contact with neighbouring Tani languages have made historical analysis more difficult (Modi 2017). Regardless, Milang is, phylogenetically speaking, likely very far removed from the Tibetic languages discussed above.

All of these case studies demonstrate quite different references to social structures and relationships in epistemic marking, suggesting that there is a great deal of breadth in how these conditions can manifest, as well as how widespread they are. As is discussed above in Section 7.3.2, the identification of such systems is mired by the often opaque or less readily accessible nature of social structures to researchers. This is reflected in the fact that two of the researchers responsible for the analyses discussed here are able to provide a greater deal of insight into cul-

tural practices than might otherwise be possible for many other researchers. Namely, Bettina Zeisler has spent multiple decades working with Ladakhi speakers and communities, and Yankee Modi is an Indigenous linguist and Adi community member for whom Milang is a heritage language.

### 7.3.3.1 Amdo

The core of the social conditions affecting the use of epistemic marking in Amdo Tibetan is the flexibility of the use of the egophoric epistemic base beyond the archetypal egophoric distribution of first-person in declaratives and second-person in interrogatives. This is by no means new or unique to Amdo Tibetan, and has been discussed in Section 2.4.3. In Amdo Tibetan, egophoric marking can be extended to third-party subjects in certain conditions, in part governed by the relationship between the epistemic origo and the third-person referent (Tribur 2019).

Amdo Tibetan copulas mark a primary two-way distinction between egophoric and non-egophoric, along with a large number of compound forms marking further epistemic distinctions. As with many Tibetic languages, these copulas further exist in two sets: equative and existential. As such, there are four copulas whose distribution, along with their analysis in Tribur (2019), are of interest here. These are the equative egophoric and non-egophoric<sup>4</sup> copulas *jn* and *zε*, as well as their existential equivalents *jot* and *joka*. The various compound copulas are comprised of the two egophoric copulas *jn* and *jot* and some other morphological components, including but not limited to the non-egophoric equative copula *zε* and various nominalisers.

For the most part, this egophoric distinction follows the archetypal distribution, but there are some cases where this is not necessary. Interestingly, Tribur (2019) notes variation in the strictness of this distribution between varieties. Namely, she records that while there are cases in both the Gcig.sgril (Jigzhi) and Rnga.ba (Ngawa) counties, which are neighbouring across the border between Sichuan and Qinghai provinces, constructions are allowed in Rnga.ba which are strongly dispreferred in Gcig.sgril. A number of examples are given in (36), presenting data on both varieties from Tribur (2019).

- (36) a. *ŋa si ret? ŋa azay ret.*  
1s who EQ.ALLO 1s uncle EQ.ALLO  
'Who am I? I am Uncle!' Gcig.sgril variety (p.311)
- b. *tə ŋi nəwu jm*  
DEF 1s.GEN younger.brother EQ.EGO  
'That is my younger brother.' Rnga.ba variety (p.312), not allowable to speakers in Gcig.sgril.
- c. *atce jrdøy yu-gə fcimts<sup>h</sup>o-na jo*      'Sister Ye.Sgron is up at 'Phyi.mtsho  
elder.sister Ye.Sgron up-GEN 'Phyi.mtsho-LOC exist.ego  
Lake.' Gcig.sgril variety (p.313)

<sup>4</sup>Tribur (2019) uses the term ALLOPHORIC.

(36a) is, contextually speaking, baby talk: here, an uncle is speaking to his young nephew. Of note is the non-egophoric equative copula *ret* in the first person statement ‘I am Uncle!’. Tribur (2019: 311) notes that this construction is specifically grammatical because the addressee is a young child, and in fact it would be unusual here to use the standard egophoric distribution of egophoric in first person declaratives. Tribur’s explanation for this rings true: adults are not attempting to hold a serious and legitimate conversation with young children, especially those still pre-verbal, as the one being spoken to in (36a) was. Rather, they are modelling speech to encourage the babies to learn, and as such are speaking entirely within the addressee’s perspective in epistemic terms, despite still referring to themself in the first person. That is, the epistemic origo is firmly anchored with the baby addressee. As such, the key factor conditioning the selection of the epistemic marker here is not any factor in the actual information being presented, or the relationship of either speech act participant to said information, but rather a trait of the actual individual taking the role of addressee, along with the relationship of the speaker to this addressee. This is clearly not an example of a highly nuanced distinction where the speaker is judging their position in a social hierarchy relative to the addressee, but it is still an example of epistemic marking being conditioned by the speech act participants themselves, along with the social desire to model speech for babies.

(36b) shows a construction that has been noted more widely in egophoric marking (San Roque et al. 2018), in which egophoric marking can be extended to close relations such as family members. Here, the speaker uses the egophoric equative copula *jin* to mark a level of epistemic authority more or less equivalent to knowledge they would have over themself: the fact that a given individual is their brother. This construction is also seen with habitual actions of family members. This example comes from a different variety of Amdo Tibetan to the other two examples however, from the Rnга.ba county to the North-West of Gcig.sgril, and was considered ungrammatical in Gcig.sgril. This judgement was not limited to this construction, but extended to others with the equative copula. This restriction does not apply in Gcig.sgril to similar familial egophoric constructions using the existential copula, however. This is seen in (36c), in which the egophoric existential copula *jo* can in fact be used with non-first person statements referring to close relations, here such as the speaker’s elder sister. It is clear here that there is a social assessment of whether or not the subject of the statement is close enough to the speaker to use the egophoric marker and make such a high claim of epistemic authority. Tribur herself does note this, suggesting that the construction equates the authority of knowledge over one’s own self to knowledge over one’s own family. It is not clear at this stage why the existential copula shows less restriction over the use of the egophoric copula than the equative, but there is potentially some factor surrounding the idea that the existential copula is simply denoting the very existence of something (or in this case someone), which can be directly observed by the speaker, while the equative

copula can denote information not directly outwardly available to the speaker. Further north still in the Rebkong area of Amdo Tibetan, this non-first-person egophoric marking is covered by an entirely separate form *jənnəre*, described by Simon (2021: 300) as the EGO-AUTHORITATIVE<sup>5</sup>. This form specifically marks information that is assessed as exclusive to the epistemic origo. While the exclusivity of information is not necessarily linked to any social factors, Simon (2021) provides an interesting example of the form which does, at least in one specific case, suggest a secondary influence of social structures on the use of the form.

- (37) *təxe nice<sup>F</sup>-gə kore nakko nakko-sək jənnəre ja:*  
 so barley.flour-GEN bread black black-INDF EQU.EGO.AUT DISC  
 'Barley flour bread, like this, is a black, black one.'

Rebkong Amdo Tibetan (Tibetic:PRC, Simon 2021: 300)

In (37), the speaker, a farmer, is describing traditional breads to the author, who is a foreigner. The speaker is making an assessment of his addressee's knowledge surrounding traditional bread-making practices. It has not been discussed in detail in this thesis that these assessments of the perspective and awareness of the addressee need themselves to be informed by the knowledge of the speaker. These assessments can be informed by any number of factors, but the key here is that this assessment on the part of the speaker appears to be based on the addressee's position as a foreigner. That is, the speaker is able to claim a higher level of epistemic authority in the use of this non-shared-information ego-authoritative marker because of the addressee's social position as a foreigner. This is admittedly not as straightforward a case of social conditions on the use of epistemic marking as the other examples, though it does begin to suggest that even where social status is not a clear and direct factor in the selection of epistemic forms, assessments of the perspective of the addressee still may be informed by social relations in ways that do not appear to have been widely explored.

In Amdo Tibetan, the factor that conditions the use of the egophoric form is, at least in part, the relationship between the speaker and the third party referent. It is not clear, however, if the relationship of the addressee is relevant here. For instance, it is unknown if the speaker in (36b) or (36c) could use the egophoric copula if their addressee was also a family member of the referent, or at least had a similarly close relationship. Is the important factor the closeness of the epistemic origo to the referent, or the relative closeness socially of the epistemic origo to the referent compared to the interlocutor? This is, unfortunately, not clear at this stage. While there are no shortage of clear cases where the relative access of the speaker and addressee in terms of knowledge is important—including in the Rebkong variety of Amdo Tibetan, Kurtöp and Eastern Geshiza discussed in Section 7.2.2, as well as cases such as Bunan (West Himalayish: India) where this same factor conditions the use of the egophoric (Widmer 2014: 469)—these cases are all limited to the relative access of the speech act participants to the knowledge at hand, rather

---

<sup>5</sup>L'ego-autoritatif

than any social factor. It can perhaps be expected that this will extend to social factors in some cases. That is, there is very possibly a situation in which the epistemic origo need not only be socially close to the referent, but specifically closer than their interlocutor in order to claim the higher level of epistemic authority. Whether this does exist, or if this is a factor in systems such as the one presented here for Amdo Tibetan, is not yet clear to me from the available literature. Regardless, it is clear from the data presented here from Simon (2021) and Tribur (2019) that the use of epistemic marking in Amdo Tibetan varieties is attentive to social conditions, specifically in this case the nature or closeness of the relationship of the epistemic origo to a third-party (animate) referent in social terms, as opposed to the more widely discussed relationship in terms of knowledge.

#### 7.3.3.2 Ladakhi

In Amdo Tibetan, the social conditions on the use of epistemic marking were limited to the relationship between the epistemic origo and a third-party referent, as well as only to the closeness of the relationship and the ability that granted to claim epistemic authority. In Ladakhi (Tibetic: India), however, the scope of these social conditions appears to be much broader.

Relevant to this case study is a distinction between two epistemic bases, which Zeisler (2018b) describes as the GENERAL EVIDENTIAL MARKER (GEM), and an ASSERTIVE form. This assertive base does not mark any specific evidential meaning, but rather marks a claim of authority on the part of the origo, typically the speaker (Zeisler 2018a). As a result, and as is seen with much egophoric marking, the assertive base is often used in first-person constructions, though it is not entirely restricted to this egophoric distribution. Notably, however, this is not an egophoric marker, and it does not mark information as held by the origo with any sort of superiority. Rather, it marks a higher level of confidence on the part of the origo, or that the information is clearly true, widely known, or not at issue. While this does not mark any asymmetrical access to the information by the origo as an egophoric or non-shared information marker might, it still involves a higher claim over epistemic authority by the origo. This is because they are making a stronger claim over the validity of the information, as well as a strong claim over the perspective of the addressee with regards to the information, as opposed to forms marking direct evidence, which provide a specific source of the information as a means of hedging the necessary claim of authority.

Zeisler (2024) reports a small number of attested situations in which the ability of a speaker to claim epistemic authority is conditioned not only by the standard factors discussed in epistemic marking as discussed in Section 7.2.1 and the social relationship between the epistemic origo and the third-party referent, but also by the social status of the epistemic origo in hierarchical terms. That is, the ability to claim or make judgements on epistemic authority is also conditioned the wider ability of the origo to command authority in their social group. The specific example given

by Zeisler discussed here is not, notably, speech that occurred in situ, but rather is a hypothetical interaction reported to be highly typical by a speaker.

In this interaction, a young member of a village has assisted in organising a village meeting with the support of the village head. The village head announced the time and place for the meeting, but when the time came, few village members were on time and some did not arrive at all. The young village member who has organised the meeting then confronted these people who did not show up, one of whom in particular reacted negatively to his confrontation, reprimanding him and suggesting that he is too young to be speaking to her as such. In response to this reprimand, the village head then intervened and repeated the same confrontation, this time with no recourse from the addressee. The interaction, while not an actually attested interaction, was proposed to be highly typical and believable. The interaction itself is quite long and the majority of the actual language is not so relevant to this analysis. As such, I have only included the actual relevant clause using the assertive marker in (38), with the overall translation given below.<sup>6</sup>

- (38) ...*oyo tshayma+(:) gju fhot...*  
we.incl all+AES knowledge **ass.have**  
'...all of us know it well...[that the meeting was at ten]' (authoritative) Ladakhi (Tibetic:India,  
Zeisler 2024: 77)

Here, the young man who organised the meeting uses the assertive form *fhot* in the statement that the details of the meeting were widely known. He is not providing any source for this knowledge or marking the information as coming from the village head, but is stating as an uncontested fact. This high claim of epistemic authority, specifically here over the perspective of the addressee (an older village member) is not taken well. The older addressee's angry response notes that the use of *fhot* is inappropriate precisely because the original speaker is young. That is, there is no issue with the actual epistemic content of the marking, or the truthfulness of the statement. On the basis that the village head did in fact notify the community that the meeting was happening, this information was known to the addressee, and it ought to be fairly general knowledge. It is not explicitly stated here whether or not the statement would have been seen as less improper if the GEM form was used to avoid making such a strong claim over the epistemic authority, nor is an alternative more acceptable construction given. However, the same construction when used by the village head in (38) does not provoke the same negative response from the addressee. Given all else is equal here, it is clear that the social status of the speaker in

<sup>6</sup>"Following yesterday's meeting, all of us know it well (authoritative): today [we were supposed] to meet at ten, but nobody came on time." Then one lady became angry [and said]: "Who are you to tell us that we all know it well?! You are, as it appears, still wet behind the ears! What [kind of manner] is this, talking to us in this way?! If the village head speaks like this, it is okay. But who, [do you think], are you?!" *Later, the village head confronts the lady.* "Following yesterday's meeting, all of us know it well (authoritative): it was agreed to meet at ten today, so why didn't you come on time? And why did you wrongly scold the youngster?" Then that lady couldn't say anything any more (lit. was left with the mouthopen wide). (Zeisler 2024: 77)

relation to the addressee that governs the ability of the speaker to use this assertive form, and in turn the degree to which they can claim epistemic authority. Unlike in Amdo Tibetan, where the relevant relationships were between the speech act participants and other third-party referents, here the relevant relationship is that between the speech act participants. Arguably, the direct relationship between the two speech act participants is not actually reflected here, but rather both of their positions within the relevant social hierarchy, though given these statuses are measured relative to each other (hence the ability of the village head to use the assertive form), I do not believe that these are different enough to warrant differentiating them in this analysis.

### 7.3.3.3 Milang

The epistemic system in Milang is described in some detail in Section 5.2.3.2, but will be briefly introduced here again. The core contrast that will be discussed here is described by Modi (2017) as an egophoric distinction. Notably, this distinction is not marked by any dedicated morphology, but rather all unmarked clauses carry a strong egophoric meaning unless actively neutralised through the use of nominalisation constructions. While Modi uses the term egophoric to mark this distinction, it is not restricted to marking first-person statements and second-person interrogatives, nor are its third-person uses restricted to cases where the speaker is socially close to the third-party referent as in Amdo Tibetan. Rather, the use of the unmarked construction marks a strong claim over epistemic authority by the speaker, regardless of their actual participation or social proximity to the statement in question. (20) is reproduced in (39), showing both a first person and third person statement in the default, unmarked, high epistemic authority construction. If the speaker is not in a position to make such a claim over epistemic authority—that is, if they do not have the expected direct knowledge over the event—they must neutralise this meaning with the nominalisation construction seen in (40) reproduced from (21). Here, the nominaliser *ni* neutralises the authoritative meaning, after which further epistemic distinctions can be made in the forms *la* REPORTATIVE and *pi* UNCERTAIN, among others.

- (39) a. *ŋa tutu.*  
*ŋa tu-tu*  
 1.SG eat-PFV  
 'I ate.' (p. 455)
  
- b. *joon bozar yitu.*  
*joon bozar yi-tu*  
 John market go-PFV  
 'John went to the market.' (p.456)

Milang (Siangic: India, Modi 2017)

- (40) *joon bozar yitupila* | *yitunipi*  
       joon bozar yi-tu-ni-la | yi-tu-ni-pi  
       John market go-PFV-NZR:SUBJ-REP | go-PFV-NZR:SUBJ-UCRT  
       ‘John went to the market. (I am told) | (I am not sure)’

Milang (Siangic: India Modi 2017: 457, given as two examples in source and combined here)

In Milang, it is not that the availability of this higher claim over epistemic authority that is conditioned by social factors as with Ladakhi and Amdo Tibetan, but rather that the use of the unmarked authoritative form influences the use of other forms by other speakers in social terms. In Milang, the claim over epistemic authority seen in unmarked clauses extends to social context in that it is considered impolite (though still grammatical) to question such claims. It would be highly inappropriate, if not blatantly rude, to ask a follow up question such as “how do you know?” or “really?” to a statement such as (39b), even though the speaker was neither a first-person participant, nor have they given any source for their knowledge (Modi, p.c. 2018). The origo for this claim is, interestingly strictly limited to the speaker. Interrogative constructions, wherein the epistemic authority is passed to the addressee, must involve the neutralising nominalisation construction, seen in (41) (Modi 2017: 457).

- (41) *joon bozar yitupaa*  
       joon bozar yi-tu-pi aa  
       John market go-PFV-NZR:SUBJ TAG  
       ‘Did John go to the market?’

Milang (Siangic: India, Modi 2017: 457)

While this case study does not show to the same extent as the others that social factors can condition the selection and use of epistemic marking, it does show that there is a broader link between epistemic marking and social factors in both directions. In all cases, Milang included, the connection between epistemic marking and social factors has been centred on claims over epistemic authority, specifically on the right of an individual to make such claims given either their relationship with the referent or their addressee, as well as the social implications of such claims on the acceptability of, in the case of Milang, any questioning of the information present authoritatively.

## 7.4 Reference to perspective

### 7.4.1 Deixis and epistemic marking

The importance of perspective as a concept in epistemic marking, if not in pragmatics as a whole is well-established (Evans 2005). Any deictic reference, epistemic or otherwise—any reference in speech to the world in which the speech act is taking place—will necessarily come from the perspective of the speaker. While this is not a place for an in-depth discussion on subjectivity

and objectivity of thought or truth, it is not particularly contestable that speech, or more generally language, in being a largely subconsciously produced phenomenon is reflective only of the world from the perspective of the speaker. The most obvious factor of this is the fact that an individual cannot speak about something of which they are completely unaware. One cannot report the presence of an object one has not seen and has no idea about, nor can one, for instance, bring up the politics in a place of which they have not heard, at least not without substantial fabrication.<sup>7</sup> This is not to say that speaker cannot pretend to know more than they do; rather, language is necessarily anchored to the actual awareness of the speaker, and not some omniscient narrator. Less obvious implications of this include the idea that two speakers can hold a conversation entirely within the restraints of the cooperative principle in terms of truthfulness, and yet still either disagree or draw differing conclusions as a result of their potentially varied perspectives. The cooperative principle itself can be a victim of this, in that the maxims of relevance and quantity may suggest different conversational expectations for different speakers with different perspectives (Bodnaruk *in press*). This is not a revolutionary, or even new, idea, but it is a useful foundation for the discussion of perspective here, and in this chapter as a whole.

Epistemic marking is inherently deictic, in that it references aspects of the context of the speech act. This deixis means that it is even more clearly reflective of the perspective of the speaker. While any given statement, as suggested above, is influenced by the perspective of the speaker to some extent, epistemic meaning reflects the perspective of the speaker (or some other individual, discussed below) as its core meaning. In contrast to some other forms of deictic meaning, such as tense marking directly relative to the current moment (where the tense locus is the moment of speech) or spatial deixis, epistemic marking does not functionally form part of the actual meaning of the proposition to which it is attached. That is, statements such as ‘he went over there’, ‘he went here’ and ‘he will go over there’ are describing three different events. They have different propositional content. Compare this to, for example ‘he went over there (I saw it)’ and ‘he went over there (I was told)’. In both cases, the actual event being described—the proposition itself—is the same. Rather, the epistemic meaning is metapropositional, it provides information about the proposition and not actual content to the proposition.

I argue that this underlying reflection of the perspective of the speaker across any language can be extended to also include an assessment by the speaker of the perspective of the addressee. This argument is largely based on the cooperative principle, and in particular the maxims of relevance and quantity (Grice 1989). These state that a speaker will aim to limit information presented to that which is relevant to the speech act at hand, and that they will not say any more or less than is necessary to communicate their point; a judgement that, I argue, requires a consideration of the perspective of the addressee, and more specifically their state-of-mind and

---

<sup>7</sup>I do not refer here to ill-informed people speaking with greater authority than deserved; rather, people speaking about things of which they are totally unaware.

knowledge regarding the topic or referent at hand. For example, in a conversation about the traffic on the way to the university, it would not require an assessment of the perspective of the addressee for the speaker to determine that a comment about the speaker's mismatched socks is not relevant. However, in the same conversation, an assessment of the addressee's perspective by the speaker would be necessary to determine if a comment about a car accident the addressee may have seen would fit the maxim of quantity, or how to present such information. A bare, epistemically unmarked statement of a state-of-affairs already known to the addressee can be perceived as rude, or at the very least cause a breakdown in communication, as it suggests the speaker thought the addressee did not know about, for instance, the car accident. Having made an assessment of the knowledge of the addressee of this state-of-affairs, however, the speaker can avoid this breakdown and properly mark the information as shared. This process appears to occur widely, either through periphrastic constructions—such as English 'as we both know, there was a car crash' or more succinctly 'of course, there was a car crash'—or grammatically, as has been discussed in this thesis. These references to the perspective of the addressee also occur more explicitly in interrogative structures, where authority over information is given to the addressee (Hill 2020).

In sum, reference to perspective lies, to an extent, at the centre of language and conversation in general, but is intrinsically and inalienably linked to epistemic marking at a functional level. The importance and unavoidable nature of assessment of both the speaker and the addressee, and their perspectives in relation to one another, has previously been established (Heritage 2012), and many analyses of the necessary asymmetry between the knowledge of the speaker and addressee have previously been undertaken (See González Pérez (2023) and Kamio (1997), along with an in-depth literature review in Heritage (2012: 4)).

## 7.4.2 The origo

### 7.4.2.1 Theoretical types of origo

The term *origo* refers to the reference point or anchor of deictic meaning (Garrett 2001). While it is a useful term and concept, and is used widely throughout this thesis, there are a number of issues with the idea that arise in the discussion presented in this thesis. This section will discuss the concept of the origo, the theoretical differences between the different positions the origo can take, as well as whether or not the origo in any conceptualisation holds weight in real terms as anything more than a useful concept in the analysis of deixis.

The proposal of the conversational presumption, suggesting that the shift from speaker to addressee-perspective in interrogative constructions is natural and unremarkable, clearly holds in many, if not the majority of cases. However, there are some exceptions. There are documented cases of epistemic markers which do not undergo an origo shift in interrogatives, as well as cases

TABLE 7.4: *Matrix allowing for the characterisation of perspective-marking forms according to the number of perspectives and shifting of perspectives. Reproduced from Bodnaruk (in press: 77).*

	Origo-Shifting	Non-Origo-Shifting
Single-Perspective	archetypal evidentials and egophorics	some evidentials and miratives
Multiple-Perspective	some engagement marking	archetypal engagement marking

which do not clearly fit into this model at all as they mark both speaker and addressee perspective in both interrogative and declarative constructions, both of which have been discussed in this thesis. With these variations, a two-dimensional schema for categorising how a given form interacts with the epistemic origo and perspective marking can be developed, grouping forms by whether the origo shifts in interrogative structures, as well as whether the form reflects a single perspective, or two.

The four resultant categories are given in Table 7.4, with some examples of the types of marking that would fit into the category in terms of the traditional cross-linguistic categories. The first cell shows forms which mark a single perspective and shift in interrogative clauses. I have not come across any forms in the survey in which the perspective of the addressee is marked in declarative clauses, and the inverse in interrogatives. As such, this category represents forms marking speaker perspective in declaratives and addressee perspective in interrogatives. This includes archetypal evidentials and egophorics (Aikhenvald 2004, San Roque et al. 2018) and represents the conversational presumption as described by Hill (2020). The next cell, representing forms that mark a single perspective but do not shift in interrogative constructions, includes forms that can mark either speaker or addressee perspective. As was discussed in Section 5.2.3.3, the Meithei (Internal Isolate: India, S. L. Chelliah 1997) inferential epistemic marker *-jat* marks a counterexpective meaning with a speaker origo when combined with an interrogative marker, shown in (42). It does not exhibit an origo shift from speaker to addressee.

- (42) *má ñəraŋ skul čát-pə-ja-*  
 he yesterday school go-NOM-TYPE-INT  
 ‘Could it be that he went to school yesterday?’  
 Meithei (Internal Isolate:India, S. L. Chelliah 1997: 296)

Hengeveld & Olbertz (2012) note that a typological characteristic missing from the original description of mirativity in DeLancey (1997) is the ability for the markers to reflect addressee perspective in declaratives. An example of this can be seen in Duhumbi (Kho-Bwa: India), in which the copula *le* marks information as new and recently acquired (i.e. mirative), specifically to the addressee (Bodt 2020: 405). Rather than shifting to reflect the alternative (here, speaker) perspective in interrogatives, however, the form is simply never attested outside of the declarative. In this, the form does reflect a single perspective, and also does not undergo any shift of the origo from this perspective in interrogatives, simply because it does not occur in interrogatives.

This does mean that these single-perspective, non-shifting forms are attested as marking either speaker or addressee perspectives, and not only speaker perspectives as might be expected if the perspective of the speaker is seen as the default.

Archetypal engagement marking, such as that of Andoke presented in Evans et al. (2018a), shows epistemic marking which reflects the perspectives of both the speaker and the addressee. In marking both perspectives, archetypal engagement marking does not formally or functionally change in interrogative constructions, placing it in the lower right cell of Table 7.4. However, this is not necessarily always the case. While I have not come across any specific analyses of engagement or engagement-like marking in Trans-Himalayan languages which specifically clarify how the origo acts in interrogative structures, Schultze-Berndt (2017) provides data from Jaminjung and Ngaliwurru (Mirndi family: Australia) in which a non-shared information marker *=ngarndi* can be used in declarative or interrogative structures. In declarative structures, the clitic marks that the speaker has a higher level of knowledge or epistemic authority over the information than the addressee, while in interrogatives it marks the opposite. Here, the perspectives of both speaker and addressee are always marked, but the specific meaning of each form in terms of these perspectives flips between declaratives and interrogatives, placing this form in the lower left cell of multiple-perspective, origo-shifting forms.

This final category and its description begin to highlight a potential issue with the concept of the origo, specifically in reference to systems in which multiple perspectives are marked. The construal of the epistemic origo as a theoretical entity representing the point of reference for epistemic (or more generally deictic) meaning which can be attached to a given speech act participant is problematised by forms marking multiple perspectives. Does the origo here attach to both SAPs, or is the concept simply less useful? This is represented visually in 7.2. In the general construal of the origo, the metapropositional epistemic meaning *M* is assigned to the entity of the origo, which in turn can attach to either the speaker or addressee (or a character in a narrative). If the origo shifts to another individual, the perspective from which the metapropositional meaning is construed shifts with it. In systems where there is no change of perspective or epistemic meaning in interrogatives meaning, it is sufficient to simply state that the origo does not shift in this given form.

The marking of multiple perspectives is harder to explain with this model, however. There is no single individual to which the origo can be attached, and neither is there a single epistemic metapropositional meaning that can be assigned to a single origo. In archetypal engagement systems in which there are no changes in the assignment of given meanings to given perspectives in interrogative constructions, it is also not useful to construe a system of two origos, each with its own meaning assigned. The epistemic meanings of forms in these systems are inherently and consistently tied to a specific speech act participant. That is, a form such as Andoke (Isolate: Colombia, Evans et al. 2018a: 117) *k-* always marks a lack of speaker knowledge and a presence of

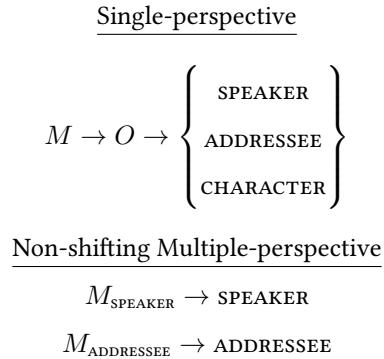


Figure 7.2: An illustration of the origo receiving some metapropositional meaning  $M$ , and assigning this to some single perspective-holder, contrasted with a construal of the same process in non-shifting multiple-perspective forms without any origo entity, in which the component meanings are directly assigned.

addressee knowledge, while *kē-* always marks the inverse. There is no reason here to argue for a moveable meaning-carrying unit; rather, it appears more sensible to illustrate metapropositional meaning as being assigned directly to each perspective. In cases where there is a shift between declarative and interrogative uses, there is an argument for a moveable origo which assigns some (higher authority) meaning to the speech act participant it is attached to, and a secondary meaning to the other SAP (e.g. *ORIGO knows this, OTHER does not* as opposed to *I know this, you do not*). This remains unproductive for the description of systems in which this shift is not shown to occur. The usefulness of the origo as a theoretical entity overall is further challenged by the argument that reference to addressee-perspective is much more widespread than has previously been suggested, i.e. that there is a consideration of the perspective of the addressee by the speaker in many more situations than generally described, as shown with mixed paradigms and social conditions in Sections 7.2 and 7.3 above.

Putting this thought aside for the time being, in the single perspective constructions where the concept of the origo is more readily applicable, it can be seen to take four distinct forms. There are clear differences in the reference to single perspective between the three most common positions for reference to perspective, namely declarative speaker, interrogative addressee, and declarative addressee. These differences, especially between reference to addressee perspective in declarative and interrogative clauses, have previously been discussed by Bergqvist (2017), who notes the two as being separate though does not make any strong conclusions about the implications of this. Also attested, though less commonly, is the presence of explicitly marked speaker perspective in interrogative constructions, which will also be discussed briefly.

**Declarative speaker** The declarative speaker origo can be seen as the default or unmarked position of the origo. It is, across both the data collected for this survey and the literature as a whole,

the most common point of reference for both epistemic and other deictic meaning. It is understandable that reference from the speaker to their own perspective in declarative constructions is the most common. As was discussed above, speech is necessarily constructed in terms of the perspective and state-of-mind of the speaker, given the simple fact that an individual cannot speak outside of their own awareness. As such, there is not a huge amount to be said about the nature and implications of the origo in this context. It acts as something of a definitional foundation against which the other coordinations of perspective will be contrasted.

**Interrogative addressee** As has been mentioned throughout this thesis, the shift of the origo from the speaker to the addressee in interrogative structures can be seen as a natural outcome of the shift from declarative to interrogative. The expectation of authority over knowledge sits with the speaker in declaratives, and with the addressee in interrogative. This can be seen as the core purpose of interrogatives, in that they are necessary when the speaker does not have some piece of knowledge but believes that the addressee does. This aligns the coordination of the origo with that of the declarative speaker: they are both logical outcomes of the underlying pragmatics of the conversational presumption per Hill (2020). They are still, however, fundamentally different in that only one reflects an actual and incontestable knowledge of the perspective of the origo holder. As discussed above, a speaker can only speak in terms of their own state-of-mind, and as such can only truly reference their own perspective. A shift of the perspective to any non-speaker referent requires the speaker to make an assessment of the perspective of this referent, an assessment still necessarily informed by the speaker's own perspective. That is, while reference to the perspective of the speaker is just that, reference to the perspective of the addressee is in fact reference to a projection of the perspective of the addressee via the perspective of the speaker. This is an important distinction as it carries with it implications for the truthfulness of epistemic marking and possible other discourse factors. At its core, reference to speaker perspective is incontrovertible. It is knowledge that is totally and inherently limited to the speaker, and its truthfulness cannot be assessed by others unless it is represented in a way that is at odds with the internal knowledge of another. For example, a speaker uses a visual evidential for an event for which they were not actually present, but the addressee was. Here, the addressee's own internal knowledge is at odds with the perspective presented by the speaker, and they may contest it. Here, the incontrovertibility of speaker perspective is not in any way present in addressee perspective, as the addressee necessarily has a higher level of authority over their own perspective. This difference is reflected, for instance, in Milang (Siangic: India, presented in detail in Section 7.3.3.3), in which the use of the higher epistemic authority construction disallows the questioning of information socially. This construction cannot be used in interrogatives, to an extent reflecting the inability of reference to the perspective of the addressee to be presented with such a degree of confidence or authority.

**Declarative addressee** The declarative addressee, in also referencing the perspective of the addressee, is similarly distanced from the declarative speaker origo coordination by the additional step of the projection of the addressee's perspective through that of the speaker. It does not, however, fit within the pragmatically natural distribution of perspective per the conversational presumption. Reference to the perspective of the addressee in declarative structures involves reference to a perspective other than that of the expected holder of the primary epistemic authority in pragmatic terms. With this, it is perhaps better to consider these coordinations in terms of whether or not they are pragmatically congruous, rather than if they are declarative or interrogative. That is, the declarative speaker and interrogative addressee coordinations discussed above are both pragmatically congruous in that they are both results of the conversational presumption; whereas the declarative addressee and interrogative speaker are in opposition to this expected distribution. The declarative addressee can be split further into two groups in line with the distinctions presented in Table 7.4: whether the addressee perspective is marked alongside that of the speaker, or is marked by itself. The latter, as is discussed in reference to Table 7.4 above, appears most visibly in archetypal engagement marking. Here, it exists alongside the pragmatically congruous perspective of the speaker. Whether or not the concept of the origo is a particularly useful analytical tool in this context is discussed above, but in any case the otherwise incongruous reference to addressee perspective can be seen as an extension of or addition to the perspective of the speaker, which is pragmatically congruous. This contrasts with forms that reflect only the perspective of the addressee, such as some miratives, which are described as reflecting specifically the perspective of the addressee. These are particularly present in miratives which occur in narratives. The speaker of a narrative must have prior knowledge of the events being relayed, and as such cannot readily experience any of these events as unexpected. Rather, these miratives seemingly reflect the perspective of either the character within the narrative, or the addressee.

**Interrogative speaker** The final coordination of the origo is the reflection of the perspective of the speaker in interrogative constructions. While it has been argued above that there is an extent to which any reference to perspective is a reflection of that of the speaker. This in particular refers to direct reference that does not involve any projection of the perspective of the addressee. Non-shifting markers such as Meithei *-jat* discussed in (42) fall into this category. While they do not follow the conversational presumption, the default expectation of reference to the speaker here seems to make these forms less analytically unusual.

**Summary** There are clear theoretical differences in the origo as it represents these coordinations of perspective and mode, in terms of whether it is in line with the pragmatic expectations around which speech act participant will hold the epistemic authority over a given statement (the speaker in declaratives and the addressee in interrogatives). It is further informed by whether or

not the representation of said perspective is sourced directly (i.e. the speaker representing their own perspective), or if it is rather based on an assessment of the perspective of a different individual through the speaker's own perspective (as with the addressee). The first of these descriptors is well-attested to be reflected in language in the form of egophoric marking, in which forms are marked in line with these expectations of authority. This pragmatic expectation is not simply theoretical, but also widely attested as conditioning morphology, as has been discussed throughout this thesis. It is less clear whether the distinction between speaker and addressee perspective, as described here, is reflected in language, though it seems uncontroversial to suggest that explicit reference to the perspective of the speaker is more common than that of the addressee, even though, as argued in this thesis, a speaker can be expected to be attentive to both in any situation.

### 7.4.3 Analysing perspectives

The origo is a useful analytical tool, in particular for streamlining discussion of the deictic referent for epistemic meaning. Rather than specifying speaker or addressee, or constantly naming both, the term origo is useful to all possibilities. With suitable caveats, this may also be the case when there is more than one perspective marked by a given epistemic form, even though the conceptualisation of the origo does not lend itself so well to this situation. That being said, it is less compatible with the argument on mixed systems, presented in Section 7.2, that all perspectives potentially marked by an epistemic system will be assessed, even where the specific form selected does not reflect any aspect of one of these perspectives in its primary meaning. There is a disconnect between the origo of the epistemic meaning marked by the form selected and the actual assessment and consideration of perspectives by the speaker, in which the selected form and its reference to perspective may be much more limited than the actual assessment of perspective by the speaker. As such, there are potentially two levels of attention to perspective to be considered when analysing epistemic marking: the reference to perspectives encoded by the form selected (that is, the specific conditions on the use of that form), and the much broader assessment of perspective being undertaken by the speaker in the act of speaking. The prevalence of attention to the perspective of the addressee in the Gricean maxims discussed above in Section 7.4 and in the case studies discussed for mixed systems and social conditions in Sections 7.2.2 and 7.3.3, as well as the inherent necessity for the speaker to reference their own perspective, mean that the former layer—that of the perspectives being considered by the speaker but not necessarily encoded by selected form—very often (if not always) involves the consideration of the perspective of speaker and addressee. Regardless of the meaning encoded by the selected form in terms of perspective, the speaker probably still considered their own perspective, as well as their assessment of the perspective of their addressee. This does not mean that either layer here is more or less important or interesting than the other, and there is certainly scope for further research into the idea that speakers are always attentive to the perspective and state-of-mind of their addressee. Rather, it

is important to note that these two layers are separate. The use of a form which only marks the perspective of the speaker, for instance a visual evidential marking that the speaker saw some information directly, does not mean that the speaker did not consider the state-of-mind of the addressee. Rather, they may have still done so, but ultimately selected a more relevant form which happens to not encode any meaning about the perspective of the addressee. Alternatively, they may have done so and determined that the information at hand is relevant to the addressee and not previously known. In this case, this assessment informed their decision to make the statement in the first place, rather than their selection of a specific form.

## 7.5 Functional motivations for the development of epistemic marking

Chapter 6 showed the prevalence of epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family along with presenting both documented and hypothesised areal spread. This, along with the wider observations in the literature that epistemic marking is commonly seen in areally rather than across family lines (Aikhenvald 2004: 228), suggests there may be some functional benefit for the grammaticalisation and maintenance of such systems. Such a benefit is briefly discussed by Aikhenvald (2004: 357). While it is not possible at this stage, if ever, to make a claim about a broader social benefit for grammaticalised epistemic marking, it is at least possible to consider the typological analysis of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages presented in this thesis thus far and develop a hypothesis as to the functional motivation within the speech act for its use.

The discussion of mixed systems in Section 7.2 has shown that speakers can be attentive to a wide array of contextual or deictic factors covering both their own state of mind regarding the information being presented, as well as to the state-of-mind of their addressee, even in situations where the chosen marking does not explicitly reference this addressee perspective. In Section 7.3, examples are given of the extension of these contextual factors to cover social features such as hierarchies and relationships, either together or to others. In all cases of epistemic marking, these contextual factors only affect metapropositional meaning rather than the meaning of the proposition itself. That is, for a given topic, epistemic marking as a unified cross-linguistic category appears to be attentive to the knowledge of the speaker regarding the topic and their claim of authority over the information. This claim of authority is, in turn, informed and justified by a wide array of contextual factors varying from language to language, including source of information, first-hand experience, confidence, whether or not the information is new and surprising, and lastly an assessment of the relative relationship of the addressee to the topic at hand. This reduction of epistemic marking to a core function of making claims of epistemic authority does not, however, provide a clear functional motivation for the development and continued use of the

system. While it may not be possible to completely prove any given motivation, such a motivation, or at least a discursive benefit to the use of epistemic marking, presumably does exist, and a brief discussion on the possibilities is worth presenting.

In considering a possible functional motivation for epistemic marking, the limitation of this thesis to specifically grammaticalised marking of epistemic meaning is less applicable. While the grammaticalisation of epistemic meaning can be seen as a reification of such marking, and in particular the obligatory marking seen in many systems in the survey means that there is a much larger amount of epistemic information encoded in languages with grammaticalised marking, periphrastic strategies of encoding epistemic meaning are incredibly widespread<sup>8</sup> and would sit atop the same functional motivations. This is to say that regardless of how a language encodes epistemic meaning, whether through grammaticalised marking, periphrastic constructions, or simply lexically, the functional motivation for encoding such information is presumably universal. As such, examples and thoughts from English are also used in this discussion, despite clearly being neither a Trans-Himalayan language, nor a language with any grammaticalised epistemic marking.

As such, epistemic marking, or more broadly the encoding of epistemic meaning, appears to establish a clear shared contextual foundation for communication to proceed more efficiently. In establishing a shared deictic ground of knowledge between speech act participants, the possibility of a breakdown in communication and the need for repair structures is reduced. For example, in English,<sup>9</sup> a breakdown of communication can occur when information that is shared by both speech act participants is not presented as such, i.e. when information is reported to an addressee who is already aware of said information, necessitating a repair sequence and a delay in communication. Preemptive epistemic hedging strategies such as ‘as you know, ...’ or ‘of course, ...’ would have avoided this, as would any grammatical marking if it existed. Similar functions for the German modal particle *ja* and its cognates in other Germanic languages have been noted by Bergqvist (2017, 2020) Similar breakdowns in communication may occur with information presented with the appearance of higher epistemic authority than can rightly be claimed by the speaker, such as if information gained through hearsay was not marked with a lexical low confidence reportative marker such as English ‘apparently’. In such cases, while a breakdown in communication may not occur immediately, there is still a clear negative impact on cooperative communication from the dissemination of low confidence or reported information as if it were more supported than it is.

---

<sup>8</sup>I hesitate here to claim anything as universal without having undertaken a much larger survey. That being said, when referring simply to the ability of a language to encode meaning about, for instance, source of information or level of confidence, it can be claimed that, assuming there is an equal ability to encode any thought in any language in some way, the ability to encode such meaning through some construction ought not be limited to any subset of languages.

<sup>9</sup>I assume in many other languages too, but am not prepared to make that claim of languages of which I am not a native speaker.

To an extent, this motivation of establishing a common contextual foundation between speech act participants is shared with other deictic functional domains. Recent research onto demonstrative selection in the Trans-Himalayan language Phola (Ngwi-Burmese: PRC) suggests that many of the factors conditioning the selection and use of epistemic forms are shared with demonstratives, such as attention, shared knowledge, psychological proximity, as well as social access (González Pérez 2023). Additionally, their selection can also project either assumed or desired epistemic states of the addressee, reflecting their perspective through the perspective of the speaker similar to the manner discussed in Section 7.4. These act to both establish common ground in terms of the awareness of referents, as well as to poll and subsequently align attention towards these referents. Evans et al. (2018a,b) discuss engagement marking with demonstrative or nominal scope, in which demonstratives contrast not only by spatial proximity (to some deictic origo, typically but not necessarily the speaker) but also, as with verbal engagement marking, the epistemic access of both speaker and addressee to the referent, in this case in terms of either prior awareness or current attentional direction. Even more generally, spatial reference can be categorised as egocentric or otherwise, denoting the holder of the deictic origo as the speaker or some other reference point (Diessel 2014). If distinctions of definiteness are, at their core, markers of prior awareness or attention by the addressee, then they too could be considered as marking engagement or addressee perspective in epistemic terms (Evans et al. 2018a: 117). This brief comment on the reflection of perspective in demonstratives is, of course, very shallow, and there is room for a much more in-depth study into the connections between epistemic and demonstrative deixis in Trans-Himalayan languages outside the scope of this project and thesis.

The overlap in engagement marking between clausal and nominal or demonstrative scope suggests an alternative possible motivation behind markers such as the Eastern Geshiza non-shared information marker -go. (35), repeated as (43) for ease of reference, shows a speaker referring to a girl unseen by his addressee. This is analysed above as a higher claim of epistemic authority over information that is held solely by the speaker, though it could potentially also be seen as a strategy to disambiguate between multiple women as a demonstrative would: this is the woman the addressee has not yet seen, as opposed to the others. Whether or not such an extension of the analysis is reasonable is difficult to say without further insights into either the context of the dialogue or the language itself, but there is a more reasonable middle ground that the attention-orienting functions of demonstratives can be shared by epistemic marking, even though the marking is not directly governing a nominal referent.

- (43) a. *e smæŋa gæ-mdze æ-lə ηuə-go*  
DEM girl ADJZ-beautiful one-CLF.INDEF COP.3-NSI  
‘That girl is beautiful’
- b. *ηuə-ræ. ηuə-ræ. mdze-ræ.*  
COP.3-SENS COP.3-SENS be.beautiful-SENS  
‘Yes, yes. She is beautiful.’

As mentioned above, a key difference between demonstrative deixis and the epistemic deixis discussed here is the location of the meaning within the speech act. That is, the demonstrative marking assists to disambiguate potential uncertainties in nominal reference by aligning the shared knowledge and attention of the speaker and addressee. This nominal reference is directly involved in the core meaning of a given proposition: its target is an actual part of the event or fact being relayed by the speaker. Epistemic meaning, on the other hand, while deictic and as such sharing many similarities in terms of conditioning factors and reference to perspective, broadly marks metapropositional meaning. This is meaning outside of the actual content of the proposition which will not change the actual event or fact being described if changed itself. In a simple transitive sentence, a change in demonstrative will likely change an argument of the verb itself, fundamentally changing the meaning of the transitive sentence in terms of the event it describes. On the other hand, a shift from, for instance, a direct visual evidential to an inferential one will not change the nature of the described event, but rather only marks a different relationship between the epistemic origo and event. This distinction between propositional and metapropositional meaning is, admittedly, occasionally blurred. In particular, while reportative evidentials mark information as being gained through hearsay but do not grammatically mark direct speech, quotatives do mark direct speech. As such, there is a question as to which event or piece of information is the proposition: the event of speaking now being quoted, or the information contained within the speech. If the event of speaking being quoted is seen as the proposition, then the quotative (marking the direct speech) arguably affects the meaning of the proposition itself, as it marks that such a speech event (the proposition) occurred. Aikhenvald (2004: 64) contrasts the quotative and reportative in terms of reference to an overt or named source. That is, the reportative notes information as having been received from some third party source, but does not name said source. Quotative marking, on the other hand, specifically names the source of information often in the form of a direct quote. The specification of the source of the information is in part why quotatives can be seen as affecting propositional meaning, as they introduce a new subject or agent to the speech act, adding a new nominal referent to the clause and in turn the proposition.

This aside, while demonstratives and epistemic markings seem to share the core functional motivation of establishing shared ground between speech act participants, the specific methods of achieving this radically differ, either through disambiguation of referents or the avoidance of communicative breakdowns by the establishment of a shared knowledge by both speech act participants as to their respective relationships to the proposition respectively. It is likely that this shared functional motivation can be further extended to other areas of meaning, though outside the scope of this thesis. This argument follows similar suggestions regarding engagement marking in Duna (Trans-New-Guinea: Papua New Guinea) in San Roque (2015), in which mor-

phonologically marked reference to addressee perspective is used to shape the engagement of the addressee with the proposition and its content through the establishment of speaker stance and guidance of addressee attention.

## 7.6 Conclusion

This chapter has taken the data and initial typological observations presented in Chapter 5 and begun to draw a number of theoretical conclusions on the use of epistemic marking and the reflection of perspective in Trans-Himalayan languages, extending these conclusions to speech and language more broadly. Section 7.1 began by introducing the proposal that epistemic marking can be seen as a valid cross-linguistic functional supercategory, which was then argued with specific reference to the mixed systems described in Chapter 5 (Section 7.2) and to the consideration of social factors in the use of epistemic marking (Section 7.3). In terms of mixed systems, it was argued that there is a cohesive functional domain across the ‘traditional’ cross-linguistic categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement, in which they all reflect the relationship of the speech act participants to the information at hand, and can be described as existing along a gradient reflecting the strength of the claim made by the speaker over their own epistemic authority (or said authority granted to the addressee). It was also argued that, particularly regarding paradigmatic mixed systems, the contrastive meanings of the various forms in an epistemic system mean that the speaker will consider the conditions of every possible form. This means that the actual epistemic consideration of the speaker is much wider than whichever function is ultimately selected to be marked. Section 7.3 presented a number of epistemic systems in which the selection of forms was conditioned not only by the relationship between the speech act participants and the information at hand, but also by the relationships between the speech act participants and external referents and each other in social terms. This was suggested to be more widespread than current literature suggests, given the challenges of observing such contrasts and conditions in field work. In considering the mixed systems and social conditions discussed, Section 7.4 argued that the assessment of the perspective of the addressee by the speaker—and the actuality of any reference to the perspective of the addressee—is also very widespread if not necessary in any cooperative conversation. This was, however, contrasted with the actual epistemic functions that are selected to be marked and the perspective they reflect, suggesting a two-tiered approach to the analysis of perspective reference: the assessment of the perspectives of the speaker, addressee, and potentially narrative characters or third parties by the speaker, and the perspective(s) referenced by the specific form they ultimately select. Lastly, Section 7.5 discussed the possible functional motivations for the enduring presence of grammaticalised epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family and apparent spread of the marking (discussed in detail in Chapter 6). It suggested that there is a shared functional motivation across

epistemic marking and other deictic functional domains such as demonstratives, that of establishing shared ground between speech act participants to aid in communication by eliminating possible ambiguities or disagreements. It also notes some key differences between demonstratives and epistemic marking, specifically in terms of effects of the marking on the propositional and metapropositional meaning of a speech act.

# Chapter 8

## Conclusion

### 8.1 Epistemic marking as a cross-linguistic supercategory

This thesis has presented an argument for a cross-linguistic supercategory of epistemic marking, combining the categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement with specific reference to a wide survey of epistemic marking in the Trans-Himalayan language family. These categories appear to share a core functional motivation of establishing a shared epistemic ground between speech act participants by encoding information about the relationships of the speech act participants to the information presented in the proposition at hand. In particular, they work to manage claims by the speaker concerning epistemic authority over the information presented by themselves or their addressee. While different Trans-Himalayan languages encode different numbers and types of epistemic bases, these epistemic bases can be consistently placed on a gradient representing the strength of a claim over epistemic authority they permit. This appears to be the case for forms regardless of the traditional category of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, or engagement, into which they would fit. The widespread nature of this marking in the Trans-Himalayan family is likely due to some combination of inheritance and areal language spread, the latter of which suggests a communicative benefit to the marking, further supporting the argument of their shared functional motivation of supporting the flow of communication by establishing the aforementioned shared epistemic ground.

Chapter 1 introduced this argument, with Chapter 2 presenting the core theoretical foundations for this thesis, integrating definitions reviewing the categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement, as well as of perspective-taking in language. Chapter 3 introduced the Trans-Himalayan language family, discussing the current and historical state of research. The methodology for this project was presented in Chapter 4, including the development of a representative sample of the Trans-Himalayan family for surveying, as

well as how language descriptions were surveyed and summarised into a database for typological analysis. The initial findings and observations of the typological survey were presented in Chapter 5, separated by cross-linguistic patterns visible in terms of form and function. Chapter 6 took the data presented in Chapter 5 and, plotting it geographically and comparing it to historical extralinguistic factors, considered possible origins for this widespread epistemic marking within the Trans-Himalayan family. It concluded that it is not possible to determine an exact development pathway with the available contemporary linguistic and historical demographic data, but that it was likely a combination of areal spread and inheritance. Chapter 7 presented the implications of the typological observations discussed in Chapters 5 and 6 in theoretical terms. This discussion specifically argued for the validity of an epistemic-marking supercategory. It did so referencing typologically salient mixed systems, in which multiple of the traditional categories are marked within a single system in opposition; social conditions, in which the use of epistemic marking is conditioned by social factors in addition to those discussed above; and the perspectives of speech act participants and how they are represented in these systems. It also argued for the aforementioned shared functional motivation for epistemic marking of the establishment of a shared ground between speech act participants, not dissimilar to other deictic linguistic domains such as demonstratives.

This work feeds into a larger body of current research into the nature of this marking across both Trans-Himalayan languages and further afield. In their original definitions, the categories here described as epistemic were, as introduced in Section 2.2, generally given in standalone terms. That is, they were treated as singular and separate concepts and cross-linguistic categories (Chafe & Nichols 1986, DeLancey 1997, Tournadre 1992, Evans et al. 2018a). As research has progressed and the exact nature of the various forms of epistemic marking discussed here have been investigated in greater detail, functional overlaps have become clear. Examples of these overlaps were given in Figure 2.1, reproduced here as Figure 8.1. The exact nature of these categories and an expanded view thereof continues to be a topic of great interest in the field, with a number workshops discussing these ideas taking place across 2024 and the last few years.<sup>1</sup> This thesis further expanded on these overlaps to draw the whole field into a single theoretical framework and analytical tool, describing all of these categories as functionally united under the label of ‘epistemic’. In doing so, it also conducted a broad survey of the marking across the Trans-Himalayan family. Such a contribution to the understanding of epistemic marking as it varies across the family has been missing in the literature until now, and will add to the collective research into the marking by providing more easily accessible typological context for individual descriptions of epistemic systems, or more narrow typological surveys. There has been much discussion in the literature

<sup>1</sup>Workshops at the 57th SLE (2024): *Epistemicity and dialogue: how is knowing negotiated in conversation?, What is egophoricity in Tibetic, and beyond?*; Tübingen (April 25–26, 2024): *Egophoric-evidentiality and the right(s) to know (better)*; 56th SLE (2023): *Expanding the boundaries of epistemicity: epistemic modality, evidentiality, and beyond*; Bern (September 5–6, 2021): *Evidentiality 2.0 Integrating egophoricity, focusing on equipollent contrasts, and re-examining visual evidentials*.

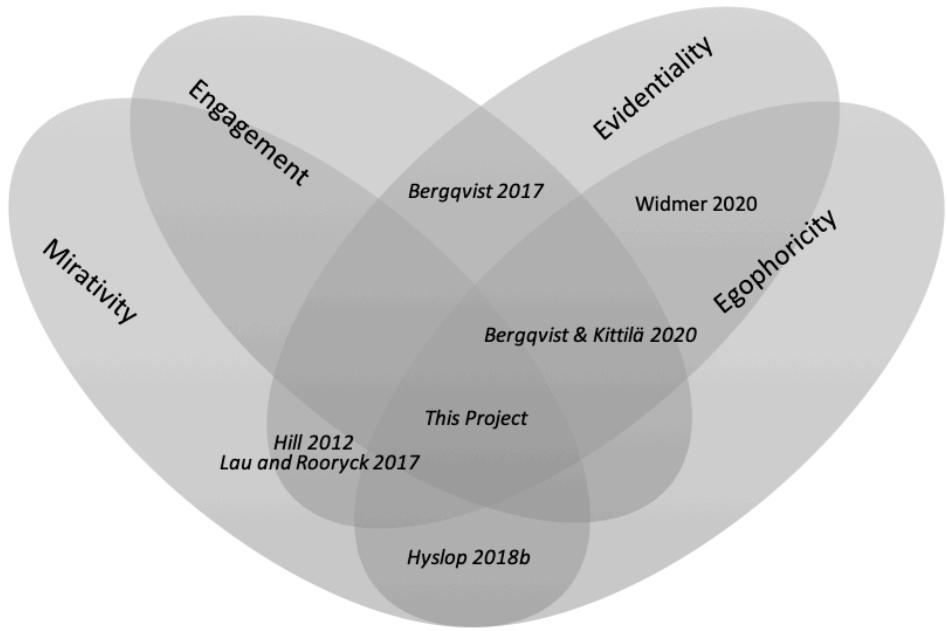


Figure 8.1: Examples of publications examining the crossovers between phenomena

about the nature of epistemic marking in Trans-Himalayan languages (Bergqvist & Kittilä 2020a, DeLancey 2012, Gawne 2017, Hengeveld & Olbertz 2012, Hill 2012, Hyslop 2014b, 2018b, Widmer 2017, 2020), but none has been able to present such discussions with a systemic view of the whole family as in this thesis, nor have any attempted to view all of these categories together as a whole as opposed to comparing them in sets of two or three.

The functional motivations presented in Section 7.5, that of establishing shared ground between speech act participants, support the alignment of this field of epistemic marking with research into spatial reference and demonstratives such as in González Pérez (2023). Here, epistemics appear to fit into a larger set of deictic functional domains which factor physical and cognitive proximity to coordinate attention, awareness, and knowledge between speakers (Peeters & Özyürek 2016). This relationship between epistemics and demonstratives has already been observed in relation to engagement in Evans et al. (2018a), but given a shared functional motivation across all epistemic marking, it can be seen to exist more broadly.

The primary conclusion of this work, that of the validity and relevance of an epistemic super-category, provides a foundation for the discussion and analysis of this marking moving forward, both in relation to Trans-Himalayan languages and further afield. A number of case studies have already been presented in Chapter 7 wherein such a foundation improves or clarifies analysis of data that cannot readily be accounted for if a more siloed approach to the categorisation of forms and functions is used. These were, specifically, the mixed systems of Kurtöp (East Bodish: Bhutan) and Eastern Geshiza (rGyalrongic: PRC), and the socially conditioned epistemic systems

of Ladakhi (Tibetic: India), Amdo Tibetan (Tibetic: PRC) and Milang (Siangic: India). In addition to these cases, there is well-documented discussion in the literature regarding how to analyse mixed systems not specifically presented here as case studies. In particular, these regard the three epistemic bases of Lhasa Tibetan (DeLancey 2017), the various epistemic bases of which have variously been described as solely evidential (Garrett 2001, Gawne 2017), evidential and mirative (DeLancey 1997, 2012), or egophoric and evidential (Tournadre 1992, Widmer 2017). The analysis proposed here—of an epistemic supercategory in which each form sits on a gradient from strongest to weakest claim over epistemic authority and is conditioned in its usage by various deictic factors including source of evidence, confidence, and surprise—moves to unify these analyses. It argues that the specific differences between, for instance, evidentiality and egophoricity as separate categories, are not necessarily relevant here, but that a description of this system and many others across the Trans-Himalayan family can be achieved without drawing these boundaries.

In addition to the primary conclusion of this work—that of the validity and relevance of an epistemic supercategory—a number of other typological observations were presented in Chapter 5, acting as useful tools for the description and comparison of epistemic-marking systems across the Trans-Himalayan family. In terms of the forms of these systems, a pattern relating to the size of systems was observed, splitting systems into single terms and complex systems, which could further be divided into reportative and other, and paradigmatic and scattered systems respectively. Another avenue for the categorisation of the data was seen in the position and scope of markings, in that they would appear as copulas, nominalisers, or as dedicated markers, the latter of which could take either verbal scope (attached to the verb) or clausal scope (e.g. sentence or clause final particles). In terms of functions, systems could be seen to either mark a single traditional category or multiple, though this distinction is less relevant when treating epistemic marking as a single coherent category, as has been argued in this thesis. It also noted patterns in the presence of explicit reference to addressee perspective (separate to any pragmatically necessary attention to the perspective of the addressee), which could occur on interrogatives, declaratives, both, or neither.

Chapter 6 began to use these typological observations, in particular the size of the systems in the dataset, to assess trends across the family in geographic terms. A comparison of these patterns with historical extra-linguistic factors across the Himalayas such as trade, religion, and political influence, then attempted to draw some conclusion about the origins and development of the widespread epistemic marking across the Trans-Himalayan family. Here, it was able identify a trend for complex epistemic systems to occur mostly in regions with contact with Tibetic languages, while languages without epistemic marking at all tended to occur in contact with non-Trans-Himalayan languages, or at least have a history of such. A lack of historical data on a number of key factors were shown to limit our ability at this stage to reconstruct the historical development of the marking in the family. These factors were historical levels of multilingual-

ism, community sizes, and the time scale of the development of these systems (in turn obscured by a lack of shared forms between systems). Without these, we are unable determine whether the trends seen today are the result of areal diffusion of complex epistemic marking facilitated by the Tibetic family and its spread and influence across the Himalayas, or if instead epistemic marking is an inherited trait across the family that has been lost in languages with high levels of contact with non-Trans-Himalayan languages. Regardless of the strength of the conclusions able to be drawn in this particular scenario, the investigation acts as an example of the typological observations presented in this theses in use, showing the insights that can be gained in its use.

## 8.2 Limitations

The framework proposed here is not being asserted as a replacement of all previous frameworks for the analysis of epistemic-marking systems in Trans-Himalayan languages. Rather, it serves as a supplementary framework to both account for and describe systems whose variation has been inadequately addressed by previous analytical frameworks, and to compare forms and functions cross-linguistically where such comparisons would not otherwise be readily possible.

This thesis dealt with limited data in the sense that many Trans-Himalayan languages were not considered. While efforts were taken to ensure as representative a sample as possible, as discussed in detail in Section 4.2, the total number of languages that it was possible to sample was ultimately only a small percentage of the total diversity within the family. This is primarily a result of two factors. Firstly, there is necessarily a limit on the scope this project can take given the time restraints of a doctoral thesis. Secondly, in many areas of the family, descriptive data at the level of detail necessary for this project simply does not exist, or was not readily accessible. The primary risk from this limitation is the possibility that a language with some incredibly divergent system of representing epistemic meaning and function has been missed, though presumably such a system, if it has been described as such in the literature, would have been salient enough in the literature to have been considered in the survey even if not included in the representative sample. For instance, languages such as Lhasa Tibetan and Ladakhi were not featured in the initial systematic survey, but were identified for their well-researched and interesting epistemic systems nonetheless. Given this, if some such system which would drastically change the analysis presented in this thesis does exist in the family, it seems more likely that it simply has not yet been described. This does not, of course, remove this limitation, but rather speaks to the value of further research on the typology epistemic marking even within the Trans-Himalayan family.

Similarly, I am hesitant throughout my arguments to extend the conclusions here to language at a wider scale. In only surveying a single, albeit very large, language family, the arguments presented here can be well-justified within the family but not beyond. Literature on languages outside the Trans-Himalayan family does seem to follow general trends seen here. For instance,

the marking evidential paradigm in Duna (Trans-New-Guinea: Papua New Guinea) marks the self as a source of evidence (San Roque & Loughnane 2012), representing the functional overlap between evidentiality and egophoricity both argued here and in previous literature on Trans-Himalayan languages (Gawne 2017, Hill 2020). Similarly, the attestation of engagement, marking speaker and addressee access to information, is widespread and not limited to any one family or region (Evans et al. 2018a). Here again is an opportunity for further research, considering more widely how the categories of epistemic modality, evidentiality, egophoricity, mirativity, and engagement overlap and interact in terms of epistemic authority and the establishment of shared ground between speech act participants.

A more methodologically centred limitation of this research is the reliance on publicly available analyses. The data is only as detailed as its description within the source material, which is not necessarily focussed on epistemic marking. As was discussed in Section 4.2.2, it is difficult, if not impossible, to draw a line between descriptions where no there is no grammatically marked epistemic marking or where it has simply not been covered where it is never mentioned or clarified. This is particularly the case in shorter works such as grammar sketches (e.g. the historical language Pyu (Subfamily Unclear: Myanmar, Miyake 2019)), Master's theses (e.g. Kayah Monu (Karenic: Myanmar, Aung 2013)), or some shorter doctoral theses (e.g. Zeme (Zeme subfamily: India, Chanu 2017)). Without specific mention of a lack of epistemic marking in any form, it is not realistic in these shorter descriptions to claim that epistemic marking is not present. In many ways, this stems from the wider issue regarding a lack of description across the family, rather than any specific limitation of the use of only publicly accessible description.

### 8.3 Further research

As is the case with most, if not all research into Trans-Himalayan languages, particularly in typology, there is an eternal need for wider reaching and more detailed descriptive coverage. This need is particularly strong for languages of unclear relationships to the wider family, such as those in Bhutan (e.g. Lhokpu, Gongduk, Black Mountain Mönpa) and Arunachal Pradesh (e.g. Hruso, Milang, among others). Further documentary and descriptive work across the family will provide both further data to refine the conclusions drawn in this thesis, as well as an opportunity to test the descriptive and classificatory tools proposed here. This further documentary and descriptive work would be best supported by methodological decisions informed by the conclusions drawn here building on other work. The importance of contextually rich data has been previously established (Grzech et al. 2020, Bodnaruk 2023b). The inherently deictic nature of epistemic marking has been further discussed in this thesis, further highlighting the importance of this. Notably, it argues that the perspectives of both the speaker and addressee are always important in the selection of forms, and ought to be considered as such in language description. In particular where a

researcher is not a member of the speech community, there will likely be an asymmetry between both social status and access to or authority over knowledge which could condition the use of forms in a way which would not be seen in conversation between two community members, or without the researcher present. Similarly, the shifting coordination of knowledge between speech act participants throughout discourse can affect the deictic context of any single utterance therein (see Section 7.2.2.2 and (35) for a discussion on this in Eastern Geshiza (*rGyalrongic*: PRC)). Given this, the analysis and subsequent presentation of examples as dialogue rather than a single line would better capture the full picture of epistemic marking in actual use. There is also substantial scope, as discussed in terms of the limitations above, for the expansion of the conclusions established here to languages further afield. Research on the functional domains discussed in this thesis is prominent in areas such as South America (see the research of Karolina Grzech and Henrik Bergqvist, *inter alia*), and remains to be integrated into the framework presented here.

Beyond the constant call for broader and more detailed data, there remain some unanswered questions. Most of this thesis has focussed on epistemic marking limited to those with verbal or clausal scope. It only briefly, in Section 7.5, compared these systems to those with nominal or demonstrative scope. These epistemically conditioned nominal markers have been attested specifically with reference to engagement both within the Trans-Himalayan family (González-Pérez 2022) and more widely (Evans et al. 2018a,b). It remains to be investigated in detail within this broader framework of epistemic marking how these (entirely, or alongside spatial) epistemically conditioned forms relate to the verbal marking presented in this thesis, beyond an initial observation that there appear to be similarities in their underlying functional motivation. This thesis also largely limited its scope to grammatical marking in Trans-Himalayan languages, avoiding lexical or periphrastic strategies of encoding epistemic meanings. As touched on in Chapter 7, the underlying pragmatics of epistemic marking are presumably shared across grammatical and other methods of encoding these meanings, and can presumably then be compared in functional (though not formal) terms. There is as such scope to consider the functions of these other epistemic-marking strategies in terms of the conclusions drawn here, especially in more isolating languages where the boundary between particle and lexeme might be harder to distinguish.

# Appendix A

## Field work and original data collection

### A.1 Lhokpu

During this project, primary data was collected on Lhokpu (Subgroup unclear: Bhutan) to fill in a gap in the available data. As has been discussed above, Lhokpu has been hypothesised as aligning with the Dimalish subfamily, and while the conclusions in Grollmann & Gerber (2018) are certainly well supported, they have not been totally proven. As such, Lhokpu has been included in this study as an internal isolate of unclear subfamily per van Driem (2014). An additional benefit of this field work was allowing this thesis to consider data from both secondary sources (in the form of other grammars), and here a primary source. While this does not necessarily add any substantial quantitative benefit to the database developed in Chapter 4, it gave me a better understanding of the manifestation of epistemic marking in actual language use, and the descriptive and analytical process undertaken in the secondary sources referenced.

Lhokpu is spoken in a small number of villages in the Dophuchen and Tading gewogs of Samtse district, in south-western Bhutan. There are two non-contiguous groups of speakers, one located about 15km up the Amo Chhu (River) from the other, which is in turn a similar distance upriver of Totopara, the village in which the potentially closely related language Toto is spoken. Grollmann & Gerber (2018) estimate approximately 2500 speakers across all villages, though more recent estimates (Mareike Wulff, p.c. 2024) are as low as 800, many (potentially all) of whom also speak Nepali, and to a lesser extent, Dzongkha and English.

For this project, the data collected needed to efficiently reflect any epistemic-marking system that may exist in the language, as time in the field was strictly limited. With the time available (especially given this was a smaller component of the larger project), recording large amounts of natural and unprovoked dialogue, stories, and other content, and then identifying the relevant

forms therein, was not feasible. It can also be difficult to establish what the actual epistemic content of forms used in these settings would be, as it may not be totally clear to a researcher what the relationships of the speaker and addressee are to any given piece of information. On the other hand, it has been noted that speakers are not typically consciously aware of epistemic distinctions in language, and as such it can be difficult to ask or directly elicit them (Gawne 2013, Grzech et al. 2020). As such, a middle-ground approach was used here, in which elicitation activities were used to generate naturalistic conversation data within an established and controlled epistemic context. These activities in particular draw from the work of Gawne (2013, 2020) and her discussion on using such tools, as well as Grzech et al. (2020).

## A.2 Field Methods and Elicitation Activities

By establishing a set of contrastive epistemic contexts across the elicitation activities run, it is possible, at least to a certain extent, to ascertain more clearly the conditioning factors behind the selection of forms. The two primary activities that were run were the “Family Problems Picture Task” (San Roque et al. 2012) and the “Man and Tree Picture Sets” (Levinson et al. 1992). These activities comprised the majority of the field work undertaken, and were supplemented by a small amount of elicitation of basic language structures and the collection of a wordlist.

### A.2.1 Family Problems Picture Task

The Family Problems Picture Task was specifically developed with the elicitation of epistemic forms in mind (San Roque et al. 2012), and involves four parts. First, two participants are presented with a set of images (Carroll et al. 2009) depicting various interactions between family members in a pseudo-random order<sup>1</sup> and are asked to describe them. Next, they are asked to confer and place the images in an order that depicts a story, and finally are asked to tell the story, once in third-person and once in first-person.

Across these parts, a number of different epistemic contexts are created. Table A.1 shows these contexts, and the parts in which they are present. Visual evidence can be found in the descriptions and discussion, as participants are seeing the images for the first time, and subsequently discussing their contents. Similarly, inferential evidence could also be found in both, though potentially more prominently in the discussion phase, as participants are piecing together a story from the illustrations, requiring them to draw inferences about the exact events depicted. The description phase also shows equal epistemic authority over the images for both participants, as neither one will have seen the activity before. This equal authority might also be reflected as shared information, new information (i.e. mirative), or non-origo authority. Non-origo authority

---

<sup>1</sup>The order is random for the participants, but is given by San Roque et al. (2012) to allow for consistency and easier analysis down the line, so analysts do not need to work out which image is being described.

TABLE A.1: *Epistemic contexts covered by each part of the Family Problems Picture Task*

	Description	Discussion	Third-person telling	First-person telling
Visual evidence	✓	✓		
Inferential evidence	✓	✓		
Non-origo or equal authority	✓			
Participatory evidence				✓
Factual or neutral evidence			✓	

is distinguished from equal authority in that while they both accurately describe the epistemic context created in the task, equal authority refers to systems encoding that both speech act participants have the same authority, but not the strength of that authority. In contrast, non-origo authority refers to systems encoding specifically the lack of authority over the information at hand of the origo (speaker in declarative, addressee in interrogative), but does not directly reflect the addressee's perspective. Participatory evidence, or egophoric evidence (Gawne 2017), can be marked in the first-person telling of the story, as could, along with the other parts, factual or neutral evidence as per Zemp (2020).

In some cases, namely with the non-origo and equal authority, as well as the participatory and factual evidentials, the conditions for two of the given epistemic bases are met in a single part of the activity. For instance, participatory evidence and factual evidence could theoretically be triggered by the same epistemic context. They are, however, functionally distinct in theoretical terms and as such have been included separately. That being said, without further evidence or usage contexts that are able to distinguish, it would not be directly possible from the data produced by this activity alone to determine if a given form used in the first-person telling is conditioned by direct speaker involvement in the form of participatory evidence, or by a broader higher origo-authority as seen in factual evidentials. The typology of these similar-yet-different epistemic bases is discussed in greater detail in Section 5.2.3.

### A.2.2 Man and Tree Picture Sets

The Man and Tree Picture Sets (Levinson et al. 1992) are a series of image sets depicting plastic figures in various arrangements. Within the sets, different images show different arrangements of the same objects. Three sets were used in this project, some of which were combinations or subsets of the sets initially given in Levinson et al. (1992), and as such are given their own labels in the context of this project. The first set, BALLS, has four images showing red and yellow balls in various spatial and colour configurations. The second, SAWDUST, depicts a small pot full of sawdust, a plant, and a basket, with the pot variously covered, uncovered, overflowing, or entirely absent. The last set, PIGS, shows a number of men, pigs, and small bushes in various numbers and

TABLE A.2: *Epistemic contexts covered by different areas of the Man and Tree Picture Task*

	Director Description	Matcher Questions
Visual Evidence	✓	
Unequal epistemic authority	✓	✓
Shifted Origo in Questions		✓

configurations. The first two sets are substantially smaller than the pigs, and were used to teach participants the activity, and as a sort of warm-up activity.

The activity itself was run as a guessing game or director-matcher task, in which one participant, the matcher, has all images in the set laid out in front of them on cards, and the other, the director, has all images in a deck face-down. Between the participants is a partition such that the director cannot see the matcher's face-up array of images. One by one, the director draws a card and describes it to the matcher, who asks questions in turn, until the matcher is able to select which card the director has just drawn. They confirm that the card is correct, then repeat the process until all cards have been drawn.

The activity was originally designed for the elicitation of spatial reference systems, for which it was very effective here (though the analysis stemming from this falls outside the scope of this thesis), but has been repurposed here with a degree of success for the elicitation of epistemics. As with the Family Problems Picture Task, the activity creates a number of different epistemic contexts, though with the simpler task with fewer stages, there are fewer epistemic contrasts developed.

The Man and Tree activity has fewer separate stages than the Family Problems activity, and has been presented in Table A.2 divided into the speech acts of each participant. The Director Description refers to the initial description of the image, and subsequent further comments on the image in response to questions from the matcher, which comprise the other speech acts in the activity. Visual evidence can be seen primarily in the initial descriptions of the images from the director. In all cases this task shows unequal epistemic authority (contrasted with the Family Problems activity), in that the director has sole access to the aforementioned visual evidence at all times, and the matcher is either polling that visual evidence in asking questions, or polling a more authoritative evidence in confirming if they have selected the correct image. The useful difference between these two uses of unequal epistemic authority (the director and the matcher) then, is that one is speaker-origo, with the speaker referencing their own awareness, and the other is, being interrogative, likely addressee-origo.

The contrast between the equal epistemic authority in the Family Problems activity and the unequal epistemic authority here is a further distinction able to be drawn from these two tasks. In other cases, it was these confirmation questions polling clearly non-shared unequal knowledge

that was able to shed light on an epistemic system potentially conditioned by epistemic authority (Bodnaruk 2023b). In this case in particular, however, speakers did not verbally confirm their image choices. It is not clear if this is a fault of how the task was explained, if it was a result of the social dynamics between the participants, or just unfortunate chance.

### A.3 Outcomes

These activities benefit from a solid foundation of analysis on the language such that individual forms can be better identified and separated after the activities are transcribed and translated (Bodnaruk 2023b). The lack of this foundation was a hindrance to the full analysis of the data gained; however, it was still possible to confirm some epistemic distinctions that had been originally attested in the basic elicitation. Transcriptions and translations were produced primarily in the field in *ELAN* (2023) together with local consultants, with some additional material being transcribed over WhatsApp after the conclusion of the field trip. (44) shows the main epistemic contrast with a confident analysis from the elicitation activities.

- (44) a. *nosam rang-ka [ganmo mi]*  
mind PRON-GEN [wife COP.EXIST]  
'In his mind, "My wife is there".' (Family Problems)
  - b. *ka-lok dze? nih-pu mi*  
1.SG-OBL dog two-CLF.GEN COP.EXIST  
'I have two dogs.' (Elicited)
  - c. *kona i-du me? mihā*  
then PROX-LOC fire COP.EXIST.EVD  
'Then here there is fire' (Man and Tree - Sawdust)
  - d. *kanka it-dra mihā*  
old.man one-CLF.ANIM COP.EXIST.EVD  
'There is one old man.' (Family Problems)<sup>2</sup>
- (Lhokpu)

The form *mi* is used as an existential copula in cases referring specifically to personal knowledge or experience, seen in (44a), where it reflects the personal insights of the character, and in (44b), where it reflects the privileged access of the speaker to information about themselves. The alternative form *mihā* is used in cases with direct visual evidence, in both (44c) and (44d) reflecting the speaker seeing parts of the images for the first time. Without further research, however, it is difficult to say exactly which of the contrastive aspects of the two epistemic contexts is responsible for the difference in forms. In any case, it is clear that there is a binary epistemic distinction on Lhokpu existential copulas, and that it is generally speaking a distinction between higher vs lower

---

<sup>2</sup>Speakers explained the use of the classifiers *-dra* and *-pu* as marking human and general referents, however the 'human' classifier *-dra* was occasionally used to refer to animals in the Man and Tree activity, along with the general classifier *-pu*. No further classifiers have been identified yet.

authority, with higher authority in the data occurring from personal insights or participatory/ego evidence, and lower authority from visual evidence.

Less confident conclusions were also tentatively drawn regarding epistemic marking in verbal morphology. A limited understanding of some areas of the phonology of Lhokpu limited the analysis that was able to be undertaken here. A verb suffix *-ah* occurs throughout the data collected in the elicitation activities, but not in any directly elicited data. Notably, the directly elicited data—sentences that were translated directly from English or Dzongkha into Lhokpu by consultants—are devoid of epistemic context. While, of course, such context can be described or imagined, the challenges in conscious awareness of the conditions on the usage of epistemic forms, as discussed above, mean that these described situations are not reliable indicators of the actual usage of epistemic markers. The suffix *-ah* is potentially equivalent to a form *-a(l)* given by (Grollmann & Gerber 2018), with the lateral coda (dropped word finally) debuccalised, mirroring a sound difference between the data collected in Jigme village in this project and Grollmann and Gerber's (2018) data, wherein Grollmann and Gerber's possessive pronoun suffix *-ŋa* is attested in Jigme as *-ha*.<sup>3</sup> It is this glottal coda that is particularly challenging in the analysis of the form, as its phonological behaviour is not yet clear. While it is certainly present in many words, and its presence appears to be contrastive, it is not yet clear if another attested verb suffix *-a* is a separate morpheme or an allomorph of *-ah* with the glottal coda deleted. It is also possible that the glottal coda is present but remains undetected in the analysis. It is here that the lacking foundational knowledge of phonology and basic verbal morphology on the language seriously begins to hinder the analysis that can be completed at this stage.

(Grollmann & Gerber 2018: 20-21) describe *-a(l)* as marking something “not personally experienced by the speaker or as not belonging to the personal knowledge of the speaker”, though do not provide examples. This functional description appears, at least at this stage, to work with the data collected here.

- (45) a. *jan dokŋey-su dzoy-do-ah*  
           person walking.stick-COM stand-PROG-EVD?  
           ‘The person is standing with the stick.’
- b. *siŋ-ho hut-a dzoy-do-a le le*  
       tree-TOWARDS look?-? ASP-PROG-EVD? downhill ADV  
       ‘Looking downhill towards a tree.’
- (Man and Tree - Pigs)

- (46) a. *ka tɕuŋ-do*  
       1.SG be.cold-PROG  
       ‘I am cold.’

---

<sup>3</sup>It is also possible from more recent data collection by Gwendolyn Hyslop, Mareike Wulff, and myself that this suffix is actually *-ŋa*, analysed differently due to the lack of in-depth documentation undertaken in both cases.

- b. \* *na tcuŋ-do*  
2.SG be.cold-PROG  
\*‘You are cold.’
- c. *na ném-do-ah*  
2.SG be.cold.to.touch-PROG-EVD?  
‘You are cold (to the touch).’
- d. *tco ném-do-ah*  
water be.cold.to.touch-PROG-EVD?  
‘The water is cold.’

(Elicitation)

Lhokpu (Subfamily Unclear: Bhutan)

(45) shows both *-ah* and an occurrence of *-a* that appears particularly likely to be an allomorph of *-ah*, in both cases reflecting new, direct visual evidence, that was not previously part of the speaker’s integrated knowledge. Much like with *mi* and *mihā*, it is difficult to say if, as suggested by Grollmann & Gerber (2018) for *-a(l)*, the use of *-ah* is conditioned by the speaker’s prior knowledge of some state of affairs, or if it is conditioned by the visual evidence the speaker has for their knowledge of that state of affairs. Notably, earlier in (45b), another instance of *-a* is attested, at first glance here appearing to be a non-final marker connecting the verb *hut* ‘look’ with the finite-marked verb *dzong* ‘sit’, here marking an aspectual distinction. This non-final marker analysis does not seem to work for the emphasised marker, however. This suggests that, in lieu of an analysis that can account for both uses here, there are two functions or meanings for the suffix *-a*, perhaps one of which is an allomorph of *-ah*. (46a-46d) show a contrast between the use or lack of the *-ah* suffix. It is not used in (46a), in which the speaker is referring to their internal experience using the verb *tcuŋ*, which is restricted to this meaning, seen by the rejection of (46b). In (46d) and (46c), however, the speaker is referring to an external observation and does use the (probable) evidential *-ah* with the verb *ném*, which specifically refers to temperature of other objects or individuals assessed through touch.

Between these two domains in which a probable epistemic distinction has been observed, this is the total extent of the current analysis into epistemic marking in Lhokpu, and as such is the total data that can be included. As is the case with published descriptive material, it is difficult to distinguish confidently between a language lacking a certain functional contrast, and such a contrast simply not being described in the current analysis. As such, when reading wider literature, conclusions cannot readily be drawn about systems lacking features. This limitation extends to the data collected for Lhokpu, simply because the analysis is nowhere near complete enough to confidently exclude any features. Instead, it is possible to preliminarily describe the system as occurring across multiple domains of the language, and containing a number of contrastive forms, conditioned by the closeness of the origo to the information. This closeness may depend

on evidence source (direct visual vs general knowledge), participation or direct involvement, or some higher level claim of authority, though it is not yet clear if any single of these conditions is the sole relevant condition, or if it is in fact some combination thereof, or perhaps an entirely different condition.

## Appendix B

### Table of Languages

TABLE B.1: *Languages surveyed in representative sample as discussed in Section 4.3. Subfamilies with no data available are also listed, marked with †. In cases where no data is available and there are multiple languages in the subfamily, no language is given either.*

Language	Subfamily	Source
Tenyidie	Angami-Pochuri	Kuolie (2006)
Poumai Naga	Angami-Pochuri	Veikho (2021)
Jejara	Ao	Barkman (2014)
Mongsen Ao	Ao	Coupe (2007)
Bai	Bai	Wiersma (1990)
Mönpa	Black Mountain	van Driem (1995) and Hyslop (2016)
Hakhun Tangsa	Brahmaputran	Boro (2017)
Garo	Brahmaputran	Burling (2003)
Atong	Brahmaputran	van Breugel (2014)
Chepang	Chepangic	Caughley (1982)
Bhujel	Chepangic	Regmi (2007)
Idu	Digarish	Blench (2019)
Toto	Dimalish	Basumatary (2016)
Dhimali	Dimalish	King (2009)
Dura	Dura	Schorer (2016)
Kurtöp	East Bodish	Hyslop (2017, 2018b)
Tawang Monpa	East Bodish	Tombleson (2020)
Lizu	Ersuish	Chirkova (2008)
Ersu	Ersuish	Sihong Zhang (2013)

TABLE B.1: *continued...*

Language	Subfamily	Source
Gongduk	Gongduk	NA <sup>†</sup>
NA	Hrusish	NA <sup>†</sup>
Turung	Kachinic	Morey (2010)
Kadu	Kachinic	Sangdong (2012)
Karbi	Karbi	Konnerth (2020)
Kayah Monu	Karenic	Aung (2013)
Eastern Kayah	Karenic	Solnit (1986)
Duhumbi	Kho-Bwa	Bodt (2020)
Puroik	Kho-Bwa	Lieberherr (2017)
Chhathare Limbu	Kiranti	Borchers (2008)
Yakkha	Kiranti	Schackow (2015)
Daai Chin	Kukish	So-Hartmann (2009)
Hyow	Kukish	Zakaria (2018)
Lepcha	Lepcha	Plaisier (2007)
Lhokpu	Lhokpu	Own Data
Nuosu (Sichuan Yi)	Ngwi-Burmese	Gerner (2013)
Burmese	Ngwi-Burmese	Soe (1999)
Khatso	Ngwi-Burmese	Donlay (2019)
Magar	Magaric	Grunow-Härsta (2008)
Kham	Magaric	Watters (2002)
Meithei	Meithei	S. L. Chelliah (1997)
NA	Midzuish	NA <sup>†</sup>
Hkongso	Mru	Wright (2009)
Yongning Na	Naic	Lidz (2010)
Namuzi	Naic	Pavlík (2017)
Dolakha Newar	Newaric	Genetti (2007)
Kathmandu Newar	Newaric	Hale (1980) and Hargreaves (2017)
Trung	Nungish	Perlin (2020)
Anong	Nungish	Sun & Liu (2009)
Pyu	Pyu	NA <sup>†</sup>
Munya	Qiangic	Bai (2019)
Qiang	Qiangic	LaPolla & Huang (2003)
NA	Raji-Raute	NA <sup>†</sup>

TABLE B.1: *continued...*

Language	Subfamily	Source
Eastern Geshiza	rGyalrongic	Honkasalo (2019)
Khroskyabs	rGyalrongic	Taylor-Adams & Lhawa (2020) and Lai (2017)
Milang	Siangic	Modi (2017)
Southern Min	Sinitic	Chen (2020)
Tamang	Tamangic	Owen-Smith (2014)
Western Tamang	Tamangic	Regmi & Regmi (2018)
Maring	Tangkhul	Kanshouwa (2016)
Galo	Tani	Post (2007)
Tangam	Tani	Post (2017)
Hile Sherpa	Tibetic	Graves (2007)
Amdo Tibetan	Tibetic	Tribur (2019)
Tshangla	Tshangla	Andvik (2010) and Grollmann (2020)
Tujia	Tujia	Brassett et al. (2006)
Chhitkul-Rakchham	West Himalayish	Martinez (2021)
Bunan	West Himalayish	Widmer (2014)
Zeme	Zeme	Chanu (2017)
Inpui	Zeme	Devi (2014)

## Appendix C

### Static Database

Explain table and abbreviation key here This sections presents a static and limited version of the database introduced in Chapter 4. It is included here for the sake of completeness in the submission of this thesis. A full and more accessible version of the database (and one that will continue to be updated) is available at <https://cbodnaruk.com/database/>.

Due to the size of the database and challenges in formatting it to fit in print, a number of column headings have been shortened, with a legend provided in Table C.1

TABLE C.1: *Legend for the abbreviated headers in the printed static database given in Table C.2*

Abbreviation	Meaning
A	Language Metadata
B	Evidence of Epistemic Marking
C1	Verb Morphology
C2	Noun Phrase
C3	Verb Phrase
C4	Discourse Particle/Speech Act Scope
D	Functions of Marking: Canonical
EM	Epistemic Modality
Ev	Evidentiality
Ego	Egophoricity
Eng	Engagement
Mir	Mirative
Oth	Other
E	Functions of Marking: Non-Canonical
F	Term(s) Used in Source
G	Addressee Perspective
G1	Interrogative Structures
G2	Declarative Structures
H	Other Features
H1	Diachronic Source (if given)
H2	Obligatory (if given)
H3	Mixed Paradigm
H4	Nominal Engagement

TABLE C.2: A static version of the database introduced in Chapter 4 and otherwise available at <https://cbodnaruk.com/database/>

A: Language Metadata		B	C: Scope and Form			D: Functions: Canonical			E: Functions: Non-Canonical			F	G: Addr	H: Other									
Language	Subfamily	C1	C2	C3	C4	EM	EV	Ego	Eng	Mir	Oth	EM	EV	Ego	Eng	Mir	G1	G2	H1	H2	H3	H4	
Poumai Naga	Angami-Pochuri	+	+	+	+											?			+	+	+	+	
Tenyidie	Angami-Pochuri	-?														evidential [277], particle [333,336] (marking maybe mirative)	+ [138]						
Jejara	Ao	+	+	+	+											/	/						
Mongsen Ao	Ao	-														Evidential	/						
Bai	Bai	-														Mirative [425], Quotative [408]	/						
Monpa	Black Mountain	+	+	+	+											"Terminal Suffix"	/	+ [426] narrative					
Atong	Brahmaputran	+	+	+	+											descriptions but no terms	+ [161]	+ counterperspective?					
Caro	Brahmaputran	+	+	+	+											Reportative, Hearsay [352]	/						
Hathun Tangsa	Brahmaputran	+	+	+	+											Mirative, Evidential Givenness, Information Flow	/						
Bhujed	Chepangic	+	+	+	+											Deductive, Duhitative, Mirative	/						
Chepang	Chepangic	+	+	+	+											single Probability morpheme	?						
Idu	Digarish	+	+	+	+											Mirative, Presumptive (EM)	/						
Dhimali	Dimalish	+	+	+	+											Egophoricity and Mirativity, inference, dubitative and others [2018,15,134]	+						
Toto	Dimalish	+	+	+	+											Personal, Testimonial, Neutral	+						
Dura	Dura	+	+	+	+											Direct, Inferred, Reportative	+						
Kurtöp	East Bodish	+	+	+	+											+? [2018, 125]	See Hyslop 2020						
Tawang Monpa	East Bodish	+	+	+	+												/	+					
Ersu	Ersu	+	+	+	+											+? [2013,547]	counterperspective q tag]						

TABLE C.2: *continued*

Language	Subfamily	B	C1	C2	C3	C4	EM	Ev	Ego	Eng	Mir	Oth	EM	Ev	Ego	Eng	Mir	F	G1	G2	H1	H2	H3	H4
Liza	Ersuish	+	+				+											/			Some details on reportative from "say", cognate in Ersu	Yes?		
Gongduk Sajolang	Gongduk Hrusiish			NA				+																
Kadu Turung	Kachinie Kachinic	+	+					+																
Karbi	Karbi	+						+																
Eastern Kayah Kayah Monu Duhumbi	Karenic Karenic Khe-Bwa	+						+																
Puroik	Kho-Bwa								+															
Chhathare Limbu	Kranti	+						+																
Yakkha	Kranti								+															
Sunwar Daii Chin Hyow	Kranti Kukish Kukish	?							+															
Lepcha	Lepcha								+															
Lhokpu Burmese	Lhokpu Lolo-Burmese	+	+																					
Nusu (Sichuan Yi)	Nusu (Sichuan Yi)																							

TABLE C.2: *continued*

Language	Subfamily	B	C1	C2	C3	C4	EM	Ev	Ego	Mir	Oth	EM	Ev	Ego	Mir	F	G1	G2	H1	H2	H3	H4	
Kham	Magaric	+			+	+					+	+				+ two forms of questions based on expected response	+ [291] initiative requires fact of discovery to be relevant to listener	Possibly grammaticalised from 'say'					
Magar	Magaric	+	+			+					+	+				Mirative, Direct/Factual, Reportative, Inferred Numerous indirect evidence [211], attitude evidentials [259], more on [295]	+ [466-87, reads a bit like IS]	+					
Meithei	Meithei	+	+		+						+	+				+ [295]	+	/	No				
Hkongso	Midzush	NA														Mirative, Dubitative, Speaker Oriented Modality	/	No					
Namuzi	Naic	?				+					+	+				"surprise or assurance"	?						
Yongning Na	Naic	+				+					+	+				[150]							
Dolakha Newar	Newaric	-														Common Sense, Evidentiality [476]	?						
Kathmandu Newar	Newaric	+			+						+	+				Conjunct/Disjunct [Hargrave: 458], Quotative [464] and some other clause particles [465]	+						
Khatso	Ngwi-Burmese	+														Strong Assertion Marker, Epistemic Emphatic Particle	+ [440-441]	No					
Anong	Nungish	-														Mirative, Evidential	?						
Trung	Nungish	+			+						+	+				Some from verbs	?						
Pyu	Pyu	NA			+						+	+											
Munya	Qiangic	+			+						+	+				Egotrophic, Mirative, Evidential	/						
Qiang	Qiangic	+														Direct, Inferential/Mirative, Hearsay	+ [207]						
Eastern Geshiza	Raji-Rautē rGyalrongic	NA			+						+	+											
Khroskyabs	rGyalrongic	+														Evidential, Mirative, Non-Shared Information, more terms therein [582], Epistemic Certainty [575]	+						
																							+

9

TABLE C.2: *continued*

Language	Subfamily	B	C1	C2	C3	C4	EM	Ev	Ego	Mir	Oth	EM	Ev	Ego	Mir	F	G1	G2	H1	H2	H3	H4
Milang	Sianganic	+			+				+							+	?		Lexical verbs [460]	Yes		
Southern Min	Sinitic	-?														/						
Tamang	Tanangic	+	+		+			+		+						?			Yes	+		
Western	Tanangic	+	+	+												/						
Tamang	Tangkhul	+	+	+																		
Maring	Tani	+	+	+																		
Galo	Tani	+	+	+																		
Tangam	Tani	+			+											+	?	[73]				
Ando Tibetan	Tibetic	+	+	+													?			No	+	
Hile Sherpa	Tibetic	+	+	+																		
Tshangla	Tshangla	+	+																			
Tujia	Tujia	-																				
Bunun	West Hi-malayish	+	+																			
Chitikul-Rakchham	West Hi-malayish	+																				
Inpu	Zeme	-																				

# Bibliography

- Aikhenvald, Alexandra. 2004. *Evidentiality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra. 2012. The essence of mirativity. *Linguistic Typology* 16(3). 435–485.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra. 2014. The grammar of knowledge: A cross-linguistic view of evidentials and the expression of information source. In Alexandra Y. Aikhenvald & R. M. W. Dixon (eds.), *Grammar of Knowledge: A Cross-Linguistic Typology*, 1–50. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Aikhenvald, Alexandra. 2018. Evidentiality: A Framework. In Alexandra Aikhenvald (ed.), *The Oxford Handbook of Evidentiality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Alfaro, Michael E. & Mark T. Holder. 2006. The posterior and the prior in Bayesian phylogenetics. *Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics* 37(1). 19–42.
- Andvik, Erik E. 2010. *A grammar of Tshangla*. Leiden: Brill.
- Aronoff, Mark & Kirsten Fudeman. 2023. *What is morphology?* Hoboken: John Wiley.
- Aung, Wai Lin. 2013. *A descriptive grammar of Kayah Monu*. Chiang Mai: Payap University MA thesis.
- Bai, Junwei. 2019. *A grammar of Munya*. Cairns: James Cook University dissertation.
- Barkman, Tiffany. 2014. *A descriptive grammar of Jejara (Para Naga)*. Chiang Mai: Payap University MA thesis.
- Bashir, Elena. 2006. Evidentiality in South Asian languages. In Miriam Butt & Tracy Holloway King (eds.), *Proceedings of the LFG06 conference, workshop on South Asian languages*.
- Basumatary, Chibiram. 2016. *A descriptive grammar of Toto*. Silchar: Assam University dissertation.
- Baxter, William H. 1992. *A handbook of Old Chinese phonology*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Benedict, Paul K. 1972. *Sinto-Tibetan: a conspectus*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bergqvist, Henrik. 2016. Complex epistemic perspective in Kogi (Arwako). *International Journal of American Linguistics* 82(1). 1–34.
- Bergqvist, Henrik. 2017. The role of ‘perspective’ in epistemic marking. *Lingua* 186–187. 5–20.
- Bergqvist, Henrik. 2020. Swedish modal particles as markers of engagement: Evidence from distribution and frequency. *Folia Linguistica* 54(2). 469–496.
- Bergqvist, Henrik & Karolina Grzech. 2023. The role of pragmatics in the definition of evidentiality. *STUF - Language Typology and Universals* 76(1). 1–30.

- Bergqvist, Henrik & Seppo Kittilä. 2020a. Epistemic perspectives: Evidentiality, egophoricity, and engagement. In Henrik Bergqvist & Seppo Kittilä (eds.), *Evidentiality, egophoricity and engagement*, 1–21. Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Bergqvist, Henrik & Seppo Kittilä. 2020b. *Evidentiality, egophoricity and engagement*. Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Bergqvist, Henrik & Dominique Knuchel. 2017. Complexity in egophoric marking: From agents to attitude holders. *Open Linguistics* 3(1). 359–377.
- Bergqvist, Henrik & Dominique Knuchel. 2019. Explorations of engagement: Introduction. *Open Linguistics* 5(1). 650–665.
- Bialek, Joanna. 2018. The Proto-Tibetan clusters sL- and sR- and the periodisation of Old Tibetan. *Himalayan Linguistics* 17(2).
- Blench, Roger. 2019. A grammar of Idu, a language of Arunachal Pradesh.
- Blench, Roger & Mark Post. 2014. Rethinking Sino-Tibetan phylogeny from the perspective of North East Indian languages. In Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan linguistics: Historical and descriptive linguistics of the Himalayan area*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Blevins, James P. 2016. *Word and paradigm morphology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bodnaruk, Carl. 2023a. Chocangaca equative copulas and their evidential meanings. Presented at the 26th Himalayan Linguistics Symposium, Paris. Presented at the 26th Himalayan Linguistics Symposium, Paris.
- Bodnaruk, Carl. 2023b. Field reports on focussed elicitation of epistemics in Trans-Himalayan languages. In (Presented as part of the workshop “Expanding the boundaries of epistemicity: epistemic modality, evidentiality, and beyond” at the 56th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, Athens, 29 August – 1 September 2023).
- Bodnaruk, Carl. In press. A Perspective-driven analysis of Evidentials and Evidential-like markings. In Marius Zemp, Benjamin Brosig & Fernando Zúñiga (eds.), *Equipollent evidentiality: A perspective from the roof of the world*, 63–93. Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Bodt, Timotheus A. 2012. *The new lamp clarifying the history, peoples, languages and traditions of Eastern Bhutan and Eastern Mon: འନ୍ତରୀଆମିରାଦ୍ୱାରା ପ୍ରକାଶିତ ମୁଦ୍ରଣ*. Wageningen: Monpasang Publications.
- Bodt, Timotheus A. 2020. *Grammar of Duhumbi (Chugpa)*. Leiden: Brill.
- Booij, Geert. 2007. *The grammar of words: An introduction to linguistic morphology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Borchers, Dörte. 2008. *A grammar of Sunwar: descriptive grammar, paradigms, texts, and glossary*. Vol. 5. Leiden: Brill.
- Boro, Krishna. 2017. *A grammar of Hakhun Tangsa*. Eugene: University of Oregon dissertation.

- Bosch, André. 2016. *Language contact in Upper Mangdep: a comparative grammar of verbal constructions*. Sydney: University of Sydney MA thesis.
- Boye, Kasper. 2012. *Epistemic meaning: A crosslinguistic and functional-cognitive study*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Bradley, David. 2005. Sanie and language loss in China. *International Journal of the Sociology of Language* 2005(173).
- Bradley, David. 2010. Evidence and certainty in Lisu. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area*.
- Bradley, David. 2017. Lisu. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn., 902–917. London: Routledge.
- Bradley, David & Maya Bradley. 2002. Language policy and language maintenance: Yi in China. In David Bradley & Maya Bradley (eds.), *Language endangerment and language maintenance*. Oxford: RoutledgeCurzon.
- Brassett, Cecilia, Philip Brassett & Meiyang Lu. 2006. *The Tujia language*. München: Lincom Europa.
- Brems, Lieslotte, Lobke Ghesquière & Freek Van de Velde. 2014. Intersections of intersubjectivity. In Lieslotte Brems, Lobke Ghesquière & Freek Van de Velde (eds.), *Intersubjectivity and intersubjectification in grammar and discourse: Theoretical and descriptive advances*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Bretfeld, Sven. 2019. *Theravāda Buddhism*. Richard K. Payne & Georgios T. Halkias (eds.).
- van Breugel, Seino. 2014. *A grammar of Atong*. Leiden: Brill.
- Brosig, Benjamin & Elena Skribnik. 2018. Evidentiality in Mongolic. In Alexandra Aikhenvald (ed.), *The Oxford Handbook of Evidentiality*, 553–579. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bruhn, Daniel. 2014. *A phonological reconstruction of Proto-Central Naga*. Berkeley: University of California dissertation.
- Burling, Robbins. 2003. *Language of the Modhupur Mandi (Garo), volume 1*. Ann Arbor: Michigan Publishing, University of Michigan Library.
- Button, Christopher. 2011. *Proto-Northern Chin*. Berkeley: Univeristy of California.
- Carroll, Alice, Nicholas Evans, Darja Hoenigman & Lila San Roque. 2009. *The family problems picture task. Designed for use by the Social Cognition and Language Project*. A collaboration of The Australian National University, Griffith University, University of Melbourne & the Max Planck Institute for Psycholinguistics.
- Caughley, Ross Charles. 1982. *The syntax and morphology of the verb in Chepang*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.
- Chafe, Wallace L. & Johanna Nichols (eds.). 1986. *Evidentiality: the linguistic coding of epistemology*. New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Company.
- Chanu, Sapam Sangita. 2017. *A descriptive grammar of Zeme*. Silchar: Assam University dissertation.

- Chashab, Thupten. 2008. *System of classical Tibetan grammar : (Sum cu pa and Rtags kyi'jug pa) according to Dharmabhadra's Si tu zhal lung*, (1806) : (introduction, text and annotated translation). Warszawa: Wydawnictwa Uniwersytetu Warszawskiego.
- Chelliah, Shobhana. 2000. Discovering Tibeto-Burman linguistic history through pre 20th century Meithei manuscripts. In *Ninth seminar for the international association for tibetan studies*.
- Chelliah, Shobhana Lakshmi. 1997. *A grammar of Meithei*. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Chen, Weirong. 2020. *A grammar of Southern Min: the Hui'an dialect*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Chirkova, Ekaterina. 2008. Essential characteristics of Lizu, a Qiangic language of Western Sichuan. In *Proceedings of the workshop on Tibeto-Burman languages of Sichuan*, 191–233. Taipei: Academia Sinica.
- Chirkova, Ekaterina. 2012. The Qiangic subgroup from an areal perspective: a case study of languages of Muli. *Language and Linguistics* 13(1). 133–170.
- Coupe, A. R. 2007. *A grammar of Mongsen Ao*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- DeLancey, Scott. 1986. Evidentiality and Volitionality in Tibetan. In Wallace L. Chafe & Johanna Nichols (eds.), *Evidentiality: The Linguistic Coding of Epistemology*. New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Company.
- DeLancey, Scott. 1997. Mirativity: the grammatical marking of unexpected information. *Linguistic Typology* 1(1). 33–52.
- DeLancey, Scott. 2011. Finite structures from clausal nominalization in Tibeto-Burman. In Foong Ha Yap, Karen Grunow-Härsta & Janick Wrona (eds.), *Nominalization in Asian Languages*, 343–362. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- DeLancey, Scott. 2012. Still mirative after all these years. *Linguistic Typology* 16(3). 529–564.
- DeLancey, Scott. 2017. Lhasa Tibetan. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn., 385–403. London: Routledge.
- DeLancey, Scott. 2018. Evidentiality in Tibetic. In Alexandra Aikhenvald (ed.), *The Oxford Handbook of Evidentiality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Dendale, Patrick & Liliane Tasmowski. 2001. Introduction: evidentiality and related notions. *Journal of Pragmatics* 33(3). 339–348.
- Denwood, Philip. 1999. *Tibetan*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Devi, Waikhom Pinky. 2014. *A descriptive grammar of Inpui*. Silchar: Assam University dissertation.
- Diessel, Holger. 2014. Demonstratives, frames of reference, and semantic universals of space. *Language and Linguistics Compass* 8(3). 116–132.
- Ding, Picus Sizhi. 2014. *A grammar of Prinmi: Based on the Central Dialect of northwest Yunnan, China*. Leiden: Brill. 508 pp.
- Dolin, Alice. 2022. *Borrowed traits and dubious dates: a bayesian phylogenetic analysis of the Tani subbranch of the Trans-Himalayan family*. Sydney: University of Sydney MA thesis.

- Donlay, Chris. 2019. *Grammar of Khatso*. Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Donohue, Cathryn & Mark Donohue. 2019. Extended ergativity in Bumthang. *Himalayan Linguistics* 18(2). 57–72.
- Dozon, Auguste. 1879. *Manuel de la langue Chkipe ou Albanaise*. Paris: Ernest Leroux.
- van Driem, George. 1994. Language policy in Bhutan. In Michael Aris & Michael Hutt (eds.), *Bhutan: Aspects of Culture and Development*, 87–105. Gartmore: Kiscadale Publications.
- van Driem, George. 1995. Black Mountain conjugational morphology, Proto-Tibeto-Burman morphosyntax, and the linguistic position of Chinese. In Yoshio Nishi, James A. Matisoff & Tasuhiko Nagano (eds.), *New Horizons in Tibeto-Burman Morphosyntax*. Osaka: National Museum of Ethnology.
- van Driem, George. 2001. *Languages of the Himalayas*. Vol. 2. Leiden: Brill.
- van Driem, George. 2004. Bhutan's endangered languages documentation programme under the Dzongkha Development Authority: the three rare gems. In Karma Ura & Sonam Kinga (eds.), *The spider and the piglet: Proceedings of the First International Seminar on Bhutan Studies*, 294–325. Thimphu: Centre for Bhutan Studies.
- van Driem, George. 2007a. Dzala and Dakpa form a coherent subgroup within East Bodish, and some related thoughts. In Roland Bielmeier & Felix Haller (eds.), *Linguistics of the Himalayas and Beyond*, 71–84. Berlin: Mouton.
- van Driem, George. 2007b. The diversity of the Tibeto-Burman language family and the linguistic ancestry of Chinese. *Bulletin of Chinese Linguistics* 1(2). 211–270.
- van Driem, George. 2014. Trans-Himalayan. In Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan linguistics: Historical and descriptive linguistics of the Himalayan area*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- van Driem, George. 2016. Endangered language research and the moral depravity of ethics protocols. *Language Documentation & Conservation* 10. 243–252.
- Eberhard, David & Gary F. Simons. 2021. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World. Twenty-fourth edition*. Charles D. Fennig (ed.).
- ELAN. 2023. Max Planck Institute for Psycholinguistics. Nijmegen.
- Elverskog, Johan. 2007. Tibetocentrism, Religious Conversion and the Study of Mongolian Buddhism. In Uradyn E. Bulag & Hildegard G. M. Diemberger (eds.), *The Mongolia-Tibet Interface*, 59–80. Leiden: Brill.
- Evans, Nicholas. 2005. View with a view: Towards a typology of multiple perspective constructions. *Annual Meeting of the Berkeley Linguistics Society* 31(1). 93–120.
- Evans, Nicholas, Henrik Bergqvist & Lila San Roque. 2018a. The grammar of engagement I: frame-work and initial exemplification. *Language and Cognition* 10(1). 110–140.
- Evans, Nicholas, Henrik Bergqvist & Lila San Roque. 2018b. The grammar of engagement II: typology and diachrony. *Language and Cognition* 10(1). 141–170.

- Finegan, Edward. 1995. Subjectivity and subjectivisation: an introduction. In Dieter Stein & Susan Wright (eds.), *Subjectivity and subjectivisation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Friedman, Victor. 1986. Evidentiality in the Balkans: Bulgarian, Macedonian, and Albanian. In Wallace L. Chafe & Johanna Nichols (eds.), *Evidentiality: The Linguistic Coding of Epistemology*, 168–187. New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Company.
- Friedman, Victor A. 2003. Evidentiality in the Balkans with special attention to Macedonian and Albanian. In Alexandra Aikhenvald & R. M. W. Dixon (eds.), *Studies in Evidentiality*, 189–218. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Friedman, Victor A. 2012. Perhaps mirativity is phlogiston, but admirativity is perfect: On Balkan evidential strategies. *Linguistic Typology* 16(3).
- Garrett, Edward. 2001. *Evidentiality and assertion in Tibetan*. Los Angeles: University of California, Los Angeles PhD.
- Gates, Jesse P. 2012. *Situ in situ: towards a dialectology of Jiāróng (rGyalrong)*. Langley: Trinity Western University MA thesis.
- Gates, Jesse P. 2021. *A grammar of Mazur Stau*. Paris: École des Hautes Études en Sciences Sociales dissertation.
- Gawne, Lauren. 2013. *Lamjung Yolmo copulas in use: evidentiality, reported speech and questions*. Melbourne: University of Melbourne dissertation.
- Gawne, Lauren. 2017. Egophoric Evidentiality in Bodish languages. In Nathan W. Hill & Lauren Gawne (eds.), *Evidential Systems of Tibetan Languages*, 61–94. Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Gawne, Lauren. 2020. Looks like a duck, quacks like a hand: tools for eliciting evidential and epistemic distinctions, with examples from Lamjung Yolmo. *Folia Linguistica* 54(2).
- Gawne, Lauren. 2021. Reported evidentiality in Tibeto-Burman languages. *Himalayan Linguistics* 20(1). 80–115.
- Genetti, Carol. 2007. *Grammar of Dolakha Newar*. Berlin: de Gruyter Mouton.
- Gerner, Matthias. 2013. *A grammar of Nuosu*. Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Ghesquière, Lobke, Lieslotte Brems & Freek Van de Velde. 2014. Intersubjectivity and intersubjectification: Typology and operationalization. In Lieslotte Brems, Lobke Ghesquière & Freek Van de Velde (eds.), *Intersubjectivity and intersubjectification in grammar and discourse: Theoretical and descriptive advances*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Gogoi, Padmeswar. 1968. *The Tai and the Tai Kingdoms*. Guwahati: Gauhati University.
- Gong, Hwang-cherng. 2017. Tangut. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- González Pérez, Manuel David. 2023. Spheres of interest: space and social cognition in Phola deixis. *Open Linguistics* 9(1).
- González-Pérez, Manuel David. 2022. *Grammar, dimension and deixis in Phola, a Tibeto-Burman language of China*. Canberra: Australian National University dissertation.

- Graves, Thomas. 2007. *A grammar of Hile Sherpa*. New York: State University of New York at Buffalo dissertation.
- Grice, H. Paul. 1989. *Studies in the way of words*. Harvard: Harvard University Press.
- Griffiths, Arlo, Bob Hudson, Marc Miyake & Julian Wheatley. 2017. Studies in Pyu epigraphy, I: State of the field, edition and analysis of the Kan Wet Khaung Mound inscription, and inventory of the corpus. *Bulletin de l'Ecole française d'Extrême-Orient* 103(1). 43–205.
- Grollmann, Selin. 2020. *A grammar of Bjokapakha*. Leiden: Brill.
- Grollmann, Selin & Pascal Gerber. 2018. Linguistic evidence for a closer relationship between Lhokpu and Dhimal. *Cahiers de Linguistique Asie Orientale* 47(1). 1–96.
- Grunow-Härsta, Karen. 2008. *A descriptive grammar of two Magar dialects of Nepal: Tanahu and Syangja Magar*. Milwaukee: University of Wisconsin dissertation.
- Grzech, Karolina, Eva Schultze-Berndt & Henrik Bergqvist. 2020. Knowing in interaction: an introduction. *Folia Linguistica* 54(2). 281–315.
- Hale, Austin. 1980. Person markers: finite conjunct and disjunct verb forms in Newari. *Papers in Southeast Asian Linguistics* 7. 95–106.
- Hammarström, Harald, Robert Forkel, Martin Haspelmath & Sebastian Bank. 2024. *Glottolog* 5. Leipzig: Max Planck Institute for Evolutionary Anthropology.
- Handel, Zev. 2008. What is Sino-Tibetan? snapshot of a field and a language family in flux. *Language and Linguistics Compass* 2(3). 422–441.
- Hargreaves, David. 2017. Kathmandu Newar (Nepāl Bhāśā). In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 453–467. London: Routledge.
- So-Hartmann, Helga. 2009. A descriptive grammar of Daai-Chin. In James A. Matisoff (ed.), *STEDT monograph series*. Berkeley: University of California.
- Hengeveld, Kees & Hella Olbertz. 2012. Didn't you know? Mirativity does exist! *Linguistic Typology* 16(3). 487–503.
- Heritage, John. 2012. Epistemics in action: action formation and territories of knowledge. *Research on Language & Social Interaction* 45(1). 1–29.
- Hewitt, Benjamin. 2020. *The Khengkha language: linguistic archaeology and considering the development of agriculture in the Eastern Himalayas*. Sydney: University of Sydney MA thesis.
- Hill, Nathan W. 2012. “Mirativity” does not exist: ḥdug in “Lhasa” Tibetan and other suspects. *Linguistic Typology* 16(3). 389–433.
- Hill, Nathan W. 2014. ḥdug as a testimonial marker in Classical and Old Tibetan. *Himalayan Linguistics* 12(1). 1–16.
- Hill, Nathan W. 2020. Simeon Floyd, Elisabeth Norcliffe, and Lila San Roque: Egophoricity. *Linguistic Typology* 24(1). 201–208.

- Hill, Nathan W. & Lauren Gawne. 2017. The Contribution of Tibetic Languages to the Study of evidentiality. In Nathan W. Hill & Lauren Gawne (eds.), *Evidential Systems of Tibetan Languages*, 1–40. Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Honkasalo, Sami. 2019. *A grammar of Eastern Geshiza: A culturally anchored description*. Helsinki: University of Helsinki dissertation.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2014a. A preliminary reconstruction of East Bodish. In Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan linguistics: Historical and descriptive linguistics of the Himalayan area*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2014b. The grammar of knowledge in Kurtöp: evidentiality, mirativity, and expectation of knowledge. In Alexandra Aikhenvald & R. M. W. Dixon (eds.), *Grammar of Knowledge: A Cross-Linguistic Typology*, 108–131. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2016. Worlds of knowledge in Central Bhutan: documentation of 'Olekha. *Language Documentation & Conservation*. 77–106.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2017. *A grammar of Kurtöp*. Leiden: Brill.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2018a. Evidentiality in Bodic Languages. In Alexandra Aikhenvald (ed.), *The Oxford Handbook of Evidentiality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2018b. Mirativity and egophoricity in Kurtöp. In Simeon Floyd, Elisabeth Norcliffe & Lila San Roque (eds.), *Egophoricity*, 109–137. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn. 2020. Grammaticalized sources of Kurtöp verbal morphology. *Studies in Language* 44(1).
- Hyslop, Gwendolyn & Jade d'Alpoim-Guedes. 2020. Linguistic evidence supports a long antiquity of cultivation of barley and buckwheat over that of millet and rice in eastern bhutan. *Vegetation History and Archaeobotany*.
- Ikeda, Takumi. 2012. Highlights in the decipherment of the Nam language. In Nathan W. Hill (ed.), *Medieval Tibeto-Burman Languages IV*, 111–119. Leiden: Brill.
- Jacques, Guillaume. 2021. *A grammar of Japhug* (Comprehensive Grammar Library 1). Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Jí, Yuè. 2021. From qièyùn to guǎngyùn. *Bulletin of Chinese Linguistics* 14(1). 57–73.
- Kamio, Akio. 1997. *Territory of information*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Kanshouwa, Susie. 2016. *A descriptive grammar of Maring*. Delhi: Jawaharlal Nehru University MA thesis.
- King, John T. 2009. *A grammar of Dhimal*. Leiden: Brill. 640 pp.
- Konnerth, Linda. 2020. *Grammar of Karbi*. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Kuolie, D. 2006. *Structural description of Tenyidie: a Tibeto-Burman language of Nagaland*. Kohima: Ura Academy.
- Lai, Yunfan. 2017. *Grammaire du khroskyabs de Wobzi*. Paris: Université Paris 3 - Sorbonne Nouvelle dissertation.

- Lai, Yunfan, Xun Gong, Jesse P. Gates & Guillaume Jacques. 2020. Tangut as a West Gyalrongic language. *Folia Linguistica* 54(s41-s1). 171–203.
- Landaburu, Jon. 2007. La modalisation du savoir en langue andoke (Amazonie colombienne). In Z Guentchéva & Jon Jandaburu (eds.), *L'énonciation médiatisée II: Le traitement épistémologique de l'information; Illustrations amérindiennes et caucasiennes*, 23–47. Leuven: Peeters.
- Langacker, Ronald W. 1985. Observations and speculations on subjectivity. In John Haiman (ed.), *Iconicity in Syntax*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Langacker, Ronald W. 2008. *Cognitive grammar: a basic introduction*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- LaPolla, Randy J. 2016. Once again on methodology and argumentation in linguistics: Problems with the arguments for recasting Sino-Tibetan as ‘Trans-Himalayan’. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 39(2). 282–297.
- LaPolla, Randy J. & Chenglong Huang. 2003. *A grammar of Qiang*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Lau, Monica Laura & Johan Rooryck. 2017. Aspect, evidentiality, and mirativity. *Lingua* 186–187. 110–119.
- Levinson, S., P. Brown, E. Danzinger, L. De León, J. Haviland, E. Pederson & G. Senft. 1992. Man and Tree & Space Games. In S. C. Levinson (ed.), *Space stimuli kit 1.2*, vol. 1, 7–14. Nijmegen: Max Planck Institute for Psycholinguistics.
- Li, Fang-Kuei. 1973. Languages and dialects of China. *Journal of Chinese Linguistics* 1(1). 1–13.
- Li, J. 2006. *An ethnologic and historic study on the Muya Tibetan groups – a case study of the Muya Tibetan in Muer village of Xieluo in Shimian city of Sichuan*. Chengdu: Sichuan University MA thesis.
- Lidz, Liberty A. 2010. *A descriptive grammar of Yongning Na (Mosuo)*. Austin: University of Texas at Austin dissertation.
- Lieberherr, Ismael. 2017. *A grammar of Bulu Puroik*. Bern: University of Bern dissertation.
- Lü, Shanshan. 2022. *Reference grammar of Caijia: an unclassified language of Guizhou*. Berlin: De Gruyter.
- Lupyan, Gary & Rick Dale. 2010. Language structure is partly determined by social structure. *PLoS ONE* 5(1). e8559.
- Lyons, John. 1977. *Semantics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lyons, John. 1982. Deixis and Subjectivity: Loquor, ergo sum? In Robert J. Jarvella & Wolfgang Klein (eds.), *Speech, place, and action: Studies in Deixis and Related Topics*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Martinez, Phillippe Antoine. 2021. *A corpus-based account of morphosyntactic evidentiality in discourse in Chhitkul-Rākchham*. London: SOAS dissertation.
- Matisoff, James A. 1991. Sino-Tibetan linguistics: present state and future prospects. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 20. 469–504.

- Matisoff, James A. 2003. *Handbook of Proto-Tibeto-Burman*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Matisoff, James A. 2004. "Brightening" and the place of Xixia (Tangut) in the Qiangic Branch of Tibeto-Burman. In Ying-chin Lin, Fang-min Hsu, Chun-chih Lee, Jackson T.-S. Sun, Yang Hsiu-fang & Dah-an Ho (eds.), *Studies on Sino-Tibetan Languages: Papers in Honor of Professor Hwang-cherng Gong on his Seventieth Birthday*, 327–352. Taipei: Institute of Linguistics, Academia Sinica.
- Matisoff, James A. 2007. Response to Laurent Sagart's review of handbook of Proto-Tibeto-Burman: System and philosophy of Sino-Tibetan reconstruction. *Diachronica* 24(2). 435–444.
- Matisoff, James A. 2015. *Sino-Tibetan Etymological Dictionary and Thesaurus*. Berkeley: University of California.
- Miller, Roy A. 1963. Thon-mi Sambhoṭa and his grammatical treatises. *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 83(4). 485–502.
- Miyake, Marc. 2019. A first look at Pyu grammar. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 42(2). 150–221.
- Modi, Yankee. 2017. *The Milang language: grammar and texts*. Bern: Universität Bern dissertation.
- Morey, Stephen. 2010. *Turung: a variety of Singpho language spoken in Assam*. Canberra: Pacific Linguistics.
- Müller-Witter, Frank. 2009. *Handlungsrichtung im Tibetischen*. Munich: Ludwig-Maximilians-Universität München dissertation.
- Namgyal, Tsetan. 2020. Monpas, Tawang Monastery and Tibetan Buddhism: Ethno-Religious Links. In *Tawang, Monpas and Tibetan Buddhism in Transition*, 59–70. Springer Singapore.
- Noonan, Michael. 2008. Nominalizations in Bodic languages. In María José López-Couso & Elena Seoane (eds.), *Rethinking Grammaticalization: New perspectives*, 219–237. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Norcliffe, Elisabeth. 2018. Egophoricity and evidentiality in Guambiano (Nam Trik). In Simeon Floyd, Elisabeth Norcliffe & Lila San Roque (eds.), *Egophoricity*, 305–346. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Nuyts, Jan. 2015. Subjectivity: between discourse and conceptualization. *Journal of Pragmatics* 86. 106–110.
- Nyori, Tai. 1993. *History and culture of the Adis*. New Delhi: Omsons Publications.
- Oisel, Guillaume. 2024. Evidentiality in Middle Classical Tibetan. *Cahiers de Linguistique Asie Orientale* 53(1). 68–138.
- Owen-Smith, Thomas. 2014. *Grammatical relations in Tamang, a Tibeto-Burman language of Nepal*. London: SOAS dissertation.

- Owen-Smith, Thomas & Nathan W. Hill. 2014. Introduction. In Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan linguistics: Historical and descriptive linguistics of the Himalayan area*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Palmer, F. R. 2001. *Mood and modality*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Pavlík, Štěpán. 2017. *The description of Namuzi Language*. Prague: Charles University dissertation.
- Peeters, David & Aslı Özyürek. 2016. This and that revisited: a social and multimodal approach to spatial demonstratives. *Frontiers in Psychology* 7.
- Perlin, Ross. 2020. A grammar of Trung. *Himalayan Linguistics* 18(2).
- Peterson, David A. 2017. On Kuki-Chin subgrouping. In *Sociohistorical Linguistics in Southeast Asia*, 189–209. BRILL.
- Phuntsho, Karma. 2014. *History of Bhutan*. London: Haus Publishing.
- Plaisier, Heleen. 2007. *A grammar of Lepcha*. Leiden: Brill.
- Post, Mark & Roger Blench. 2011. Siangic: A new language phylum in North East India. Paper presented at the 6th International Conference of the North East Indian Linguistics Society, Tezpur University, Assam, India, Jan. 31 - Feb. 2.
- Post, Mark W. 2007. *A grammar of Galo*. Melbourne: La Trobe University dissertation.
- Post, Mark W. 2013. Person-sensitive TAME marking in Galo: Historical origins and functional motivation. In Tim Thornes, Erik Andvik, Gwendolyn Hyslop & Joana Jansen (eds.), *Functional-Historical approaches to explanation*, 107–130. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Post, Mark W. 2017. *The Tangam language: grammar, lexicon and texts*. Leiden: Brill.
- Post, Mark W. & Robbins Burling. 2017. The Tibeto-Burman Languages of Northeast India. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- Primrose, Arthur John. 1888. *A Manipuri grammar, vocabulary, and phrase book*. Shillong: Assam Secretariat Press.
- Pulleyblank, Edwin. 1995. *Outline of Classical Chinese grammar*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Regmi, Dan Raj. 2007. *The Bhujel language*. Kathmandu: Central Department of Linguistics, Tribhuwan University dissertation.
- Regmi, Dan Raj & Ambika Regmi. 2018. *A grammar of Western Tamang*. Munich: Lincom.
- Sagart, Laurent. 2006. Review of Matisoff (2003): handbook of Proto-Tibeto-Burman: system and philosophy of Sino-Tibeto-Burman reconstruction. *Diachronica* 23(1). 206–223.
- Sagart, Laurent. 2008. Reply to Matisoff on the Handbook of Proto-Tibeto-Burman: system and philosophy of Sino-Tibetan reconstruction. *Diachronica* 25(1). 153–155.
- Sagart, Laurent, Guillaume Jacques, Yunfan Lai, Robin J. Ryder, Valentin Thouzeau, Simon J. Greenhill & Johann-Mattis List. 2019. Dated language phylogenies shed light on the ancestry of Sino-Tibetan. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 116(21). 10317–10322.

- San Roque, Lila. 2015. Using you to get to me: addressee perspective and speaker stance in Duna evidential marking. *Sprachtypologie und Universalienforschung* 68(2). 187–210.
- San Roque, Lila. 2019. Evidentiality. *Annual Review of Anthropology* 48. 353–370.
- San Roque, Lila, Simeon Floyd & Elisabeth Norcliffe. 2018. Egophoricity: An introduction. In Simeon Floyd, Elisabeth Norcliffe & Lila San Roque (eds.), *Egophoricity*, 1–76. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- San Roque, Lila, Lauren Gawne, Diana Hoenigman, Julia Colleen Miller, Alan Rumsey, Stef Spronck, Alice Carroll & Nicholas Evans. 2012. Getting the story straight: language fieldwork using a narrative problem-solving task. *Language Documentation & Conservation* 6. 135–174.
- San Roque, Lila & Robyn Loughnane. 2012. The New Guinea Highlands evidentiality area. *Linguistic Typology* 16. 111–167.
- Sandman, Erika & Camille Simon. 2016. Tibetan as a “model language” in the Amdo Sprachbund: evidence from Salar and Wutun. *Journal of South Asian Languages and Linguistics* 3(1).
- Sangdong, David. 2012. *A grammar of the Kadu (Asak) language*. Melbourne: La Trobe University dissertation.
- de Saussure, Ferdinand. N.d. *Course in general linguistics*. Trans. by Roy Harris. 3rd edn. London: Bloomsbury.
- Schackow, Diana. 2015. *A grammar of Yakkha*. Berlin: Language Science Press.
- van Schaik, Sam. 2013. *Tibet: a history*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Schorer, Nicolas. 2016. *The Dura language: Grammar and phylogeny*. Leiden: Brill.
- Schultze-Berndt, Eva. 2017. Shared vs. primary epistemic authority in Jaminjung/Ngal iwurru. *Open Linguistics* 3(1).
- Scott, James. 2009. *The art of not being governed: an anarchist history of upland Southeast Asia*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Sigley, Gary. 2020. *China’s route heritage: mobility narratives, modernity and the ancient Tea Horse Road*. London: Routledge.
- Simon, Camille. 2021. La catégorie égophorique dans les langues de l’Amdo (Tibet). *Bulletin de la Société de linguistique de Paris* 1. 281–326.
- Singh Shrestha, Shahani. 2023. Egophoricity and formality in Kathmandu Newār. In (Presented as part of the workshop “Expanding the boundaries of epistemicity: epistemic modality, evidentiality, and beyond” at the 56th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea, Athens, 29 August – 1 September 2023).
- Soe, Myint. 1999. *A grammar of Burmese*. Eugene: University of Oregon dissertation.
- Solnit, David. 1986. *A grammatical sketch of Eastern Kayah (Red Karen)*. Berkeley: University of California dissertation.
- van Spengen, Wim. 2010. *Tibetan border worlds: a geohistorical analysis of trade and traders*. London: Routledge.

- Sun, Hongkai & Guangkun Liu. 2009. *A grammar of Anong*. Leiden: Brill.
- Sun, Jackson Tianshin. 1993. *A historical-comparative study of the Tani (Mirish) branch in Tibeto-Burman*. Berkeley: University of California dissertation.
- Sweetser, Eve. 2012. Introduction: viewpoint and perspective in language and gesture, from the Ground down. In Barbara Dancygier & Eve Sweetser (eds.), *Viewpoint in Language*, 1–22. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Taylor-Adams, Allison & Yulha Lhawa. 2020. A sketch grammar of Siyuewu Khroskyabs. *Himalayan Linguistics* 19(3).
- Thurgood, Graham. 1986. The Nature and Origins of the Akha Evidential System. In Wallace L. Chafe & Johanna Nichols (eds.), *Evidentiality: The Linguistic Coding of Epistemology*. New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Company.
- Thurgood, Graham. 2017. Sino-Tibetan: Genetic and Areal Subgroups. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- Thurston, William R. 1989. How exoteric languages build a lexicon: esoterogeny in West New Britain. In Ray Harlow & Robin Hooper (eds.), *VICAL 1 - Oceanic Languages: Papers from the Fifth International Conference on Austronesian Linguistics*, 555–579. Auckland: Linguistic Society of New Zealand.
- Tombleson, Anette Helgestad. 2020. The copula system of tawang monpa. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 43(1). 37–54.
- Tournadre, Nicolas. 1992. La deixis en tibétain: Quelques faits remarquables. In Mary-Annick Morel & Laurent Danon-Boileau (eds.), *La Deixis: Colloque en Sorbonne, 8-9 juin 1990*, 197–208. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.
- Tournadre, Nicolas. 2008. Arguments against the Concept of ‘Conjunct’ / ‘Disjunct’ in Tibetan. In Brigitte Huber, Marianne Volkart & Paul Widmer (eds.), *Chomolangma, Demawend und Kasbek. Festschrift für Roland Bielmeier zu seinem 65. Geburtstag*. Halle: International Institute for Tibetan & Buddhist Studies.
- Tournadre, Nicolas. 2014. The Tibetic languages and their classification. In Thomas Owen-Smith & Nathan W. Hill (eds.), *Trans-Himalayan linguistics: Historical and descriptive linguistics of the Himalayan area*. Berlin: De Gruyter Mouton.
- Tournadre, Nicolas & Hiroyuki Suzuki. 2023. *The Tibetic Languages: an introduction to the family of languages derived from Old Tibetan*. Paris: LACITO-Publications.
- Trask, R. L. 1993. *A dictionary of grammatical terms in linguistics*. New York: Routledge.
- Traugott, Elizabeth Closs. 1995. Subjectification in grammaticalisation. In Dieter Stein & Susan Wright (eds.), *Subjectivity and subjectivisation*, 31–54. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Traugott, Elizabeth Closs. 2014. Intersubjectification and clause periphery. In Lieslotte Brems, Lobke Ghesquière & Freek Van de Velde (eds.), *Intersubjectivity and intersubjectification in grammar and discourse: Theoretical and descriptive advances*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

- Tribur, Zoe. 2019. *Verbal morphology of Amdo Tibetan*. Eugene: University of Oregon dissertation.
- Tunzhi. 2019. *Outline of Bra'go variety of rTa'u (Horpa)*. Melbourne: La Trobe University dissertation.
- Van Bik, Kenneth. 2009. Proto-Kuki-Chin: a reconstructed ancestor of the Kuki-Chin languages. In James A. Matisoff (ed.), *STEDT monograph series*. Berkeley: University of California.
- Veikho, Sahainii Lemaina. 2021. *Grammar of Poumai Naga (Poula): a Trans-Himalayan language of North-East India*. Leiden: Brill.
- Verhees, Samira. 2018. Towards the origin of evidentiality in Nakh-Daghestanian languages: structural and areal perspectives. *St.Tikhons' University Review. Series III. Philology* 57. 110–123.
- de Villiers, Jill & Jay Garfield. 2017. Evidentiality, questions and the reflection principle in Tibetan: What do children learn when they learn about evidentiality? In F. Nihan Ketrez, Aylin C. Küntay, Şeyda Özçalışkan & Aslı Özyürek (eds.), *Social Environment and Cognition in Language Development: Studies in Honor of Ayhan Aksu-Koç*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Watters, David. 2002. *A grammar of Kham*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Wheatley, Julian K. 2017. Burmese. In Graham Thurgood & Randy J. LaPolla (eds.), *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, 2nd edn. London: Routledge.
- Widmer, Manuel. 2014. *A descriptive grammar of Bunan*. Bern: University of Bern dissertation.
- Widmer, Manuel. 2017. The evolution of egophoricity and evidentiality in the Himalayas. *The Rise and Development of Evidential and Epistemic Markers* 7(1-2). 245–274.
- Widmer, Manuel. 2020. Same same but different: on the relationship between egophoricity and evidentiality. In Henrik Bergqvist & Seppo Kittilä (eds.), *Evidentiality, egophoricity and engagement*, 263–287. Berlin: Language Science Press.
- Wiersma, Grace. 1990. *A study of Bai (Minjia) language along historical lines*. Berkeley: University of California dissertation.
- Woodbury, Anthony C. 1986. Interactions of Tense and Evidentiality: A Study of Sherpa and English. In Wallace L. Chafe & Johanna Nichols (eds.), *Evidentiality: The Linguistic Coding of Epistemology*. New Jersey: Ablex Publishing Company.
- Wray, Alison & George W. Grace. 2007. The consequences of talking to strangers: evolutionary corollaries of socio-cultural influences on linguistic form. *Lingua* 117(3). 543–578.
- Wright, Jonathan Michael. 2009. *Hkongso grammar sketch*. Dallas: Graduate Institute of Applied Linguistics MA thesis.
- Wu, Mei-Shin, Timotheus A. Bodt & Tiago Tresoldi. 2022. Bayesian phylogenetics illuminate shallower relationships among trans-himalayan languages in the tibet-arunachal area. *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 45(2). 171–210.
- Yliniemi, Juha. 2021. A descriptive grammar of Denjongke. *Himalayan Linguistics* 20(1).
- Zakaria, Muhammad. 2018. *A grammar of Hyow*. Singapore: Nanyang Technological University dissertation.

- Zeisler, Bettina. 2018a. Don't believe in a paradigm that you haven't manipulated yourself! – evidentiality, speaker attitude, and admirativity in ladakhi. *Himalayan Linguistics* 17(1).
- Zeisler, Bettina. 2018b. Evidence for the development of 'evidentiality' as a grammatical category in the Tibetic languages. In Ad Foolen, Helen de Hoop & Gijs Mulder (eds.), *Evidence for Evidentiality*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Zeisler, Bettina. 2024. Beyond evidentiality, the case of Ladakhi inok & siblings. *Himalayan Linguistics Archive* 13(1-152).
- Zeman, Sonja. 2019. The emergence of viewpoints in multiple perspective constructions. *Pragmatics* 29(2). 226–249.
- Zemp, Marius. 2018. *A grammar of Purik Tibetan*. Leiden: Brill. 994 pp.
- Zemp, Marius. 2020. Evidentials and their pivot in Tibetic and neighboring Himalayan languages. *Functions of Language* 27(1). 29–54.
- Zemp, Marius. 2021. Traces of clause-final demonstratives in Old Tibetan. *Revue d'Etudes Tibétaines* 60. 398–438.
- Zemp, Marius, Fernando Zúñiga & Benjamin Brosig. 2021. Grammaticalized evidentiality in the Greater Himalayan Region. In Presented at the 54th Annual Meeting of the Societas Linguistica Europaea.
- Zhang, Hanzhi, Ting Ji, Mark Pagel & Ruth Mace. 2020. Dated phylogeny suggests early Neolithic origin of Sino-Tibetan languages. *Scientific Reports* 10(1).
- Zhang, Menghan, Shi Yan, Wuyun Pan & Li Jin. 2019. Phylogenetic evidence for Sino-Tibetan origin in northern China in the Late Neolithic. *Nature* 569(7754). 112+.
- Zhang, Shuya. 2022. Rethinking the \*-s suffix in Old Chinese: with new evidence from Situ Rgyalrong. *Folia Linguistica* 56. 129–167.
- Zhang, Sihong. 2013. *A reference grammar of Ersu*. Cairns: James Cook University dissertation.
- Zhang, Sihong. 2014. The expression of knowledge in Ersu. In Alexandra Aikhenvald & R. M. W. Dixon (eds.), *The Grammar of Knowledge: A Cross-Linguistic Typology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.